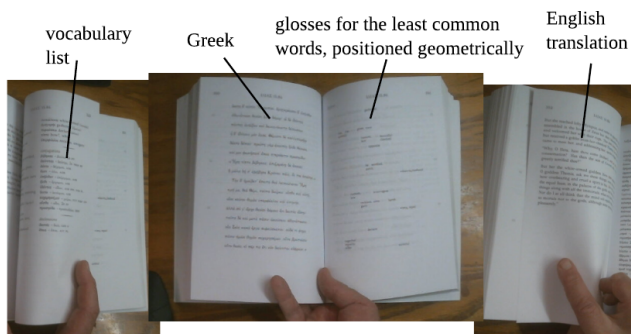


This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, go to [lightandmatter.com/ransom](http://lightandmatter.com/ransom). To read this book on a computer screen, you should set up your PDF viewer so that it displays a two-page layout, with an even page on the left and an odd one on the right.



Text and aids are presented in a four-page spread.

rev. December 26, 2025

The Greek text is from the 1913 Loeb, which the preface says is based on Nilén and Jacobitz. Thanks to John Bruno Hare for posting a machine-readable version. My additional proofreading and editorial work on the Greek text are released here under the CC0 license.

The English translation is by Harmon, 1913. I redid the bowdlerized portions of the translation in sections 1.8, 1.22, 2.19, and 2.45

The illustrations are by Aubrey Beardsley, Joseph Benwell Clark, and William Strang.

**Copyright info.** Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.



*vocabulary*

**ἀθλητικός** athlete  
**ἀκμαῖος** at one's prime; in season  
**ἄμουσος** unmusical, unrefined  
**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read, understand, persuade  
**ἀνάγνωσις** -εως (f) recognition, reading  
**ἀνάγνωσμα** -τος (n, 3) a reading  
**ἀνάπαυσις** -τος (f) rest  
**ἄνεσις** -εως (f) loosening, indulgence  
**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet  
**ἄσκησις** -εως (f) exercise, training  
**ἀστεῖος** urbane, refined  
**ἀσχολέω** engage, occupy  
**γοῦν** at least then  
**γυμνάσιον** exercise; school  
**διάνοια** a thought; intelligence  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear  
**ἐμμελής** harmonious  
**ἐναλήθης** accordant with truth  
**ἐπαγωγός** attractive; causing  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὑ) display, exhibit

**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task  
**εὐεξία** living healthily  
**θεωρία** spectator, contemplation  
**κάματος** exhaustion, toil, product  
**ὁμιλέω** (ι) associate with ~homily  
**πιθανός** persuasive  
**ποικίλος** ornamented; various  
**προαίρεσις** -εως (f) plan, preference  
**προσῆκω** belong to, it beseems  
**σπουδάζω** be busy, earnest ~repudiate  
**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent  
**σύγγραμμα** -τος (n, 3) piece of writing  
**ὑπόθεσις** -εως (f) proposal; subject; hypothesis  
**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine  
**~εpilepsy**  
**φροντίς** -τος (f) thought, care  
**χαρίεις** graceful  
**ψεῦσμα** -τος (n, 3) lie  
**φιλός** (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon  
**ψυχαγωγία** (ὑ) evocation; pastime, persuasion

## 1.1-4

Ὡςπερ τοῖς ἀθλητικοῖς καὶ περὶ τὴν τῶν σωμάτων ἐπιμέλειαν ἀσχολουμένοις οὐ τῆς εὐεξίας μόνον οὐδὲ τῶν γυμνασίων φροντίς ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς κατὰ καιρὸν γινομένης ἀνέσεως μέρος γοῦν τῆς ἀσκήσεως τὸ μέγιστον αὐτὴν ὑπολαμβάνουσιν οὕτω δὴ καὶ τοῖς περὶ τοὺς λόγους ἐσπουδακόσιν ἡγοῦμαι προσήκειν μετὰ τὴν πολλὴν τῶν σπουδαιοτέρων ἀνάγνωσιν ἀνιέναι τε τὴν διάνοιαν καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἔπειτα κάματον ἀκμαιοτέραν παρασκευάζειν. γένοιτο δ' ἂν ἐμμελὴς ἢ ἀνάπαυσις αὐτοῖς, εἰ τοῖς τοιούτοις τῶν ἀναγνωσμάτων ὁμιλοῖεν, ἢ μὴ μόνον ἐκ τοῦ ἀστείου τε καὶ χαρίεντος ψιλὴν παρέξει τὴν ψυχαγωγίαν, ἀλλὰ τινὰ καὶ θεωρίαν οὐκ ἄμουσον ἐπιδείξεται, οἷόν τι καὶ περὶ τῶνδε τῶν συγγραμμάτων φρονήσιν ὑπολαμβάνω· οὐ γὰρ μόνον τὸ ξένον τῆς ὑποθέσεως οὐδὲ τὸ χαρίεν τῆς προαιρέσεως ἐπαγωγὸν ἔσται αὐτοῖς οὐδ' ὅτι ψεύσματα ποικίλα πιθανῶς τε καὶ ἐναλήθως ἐξηγηνόχαμεν, ἀλλ' ὅτι

1.1-4

Ὡςπερ τοῖς |athlete καὶ περὶ τὴν τῶν σωμάτων  
 |attention; as-|engage, occupy οὐ τῆς |living μόνον οὐδὲ τῶν  
 |signed task |healthily  
 |exercise; |thought, care .ιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς κατὰ καιρὸν  
 |school  
 γινομένης |loosening, , έρος |at least|exercise, τὸ μέγιστον  
 |indulgence |then |training  
 αὐτὴν ὑπολαμβάνουσιν οὕτω δὴ καὶ τοῖς περὶ τοὺς λόγους  
 ἐσπουδακόσιν ἡγοῦμαι προσήκειν μετὰ τὴν πολλὴν τῶν  
 |quick, active; ex- ἀνάγνωσιν ἀνιέναι τε τὴν διάνοιαν καὶ  
 |cellent  
 πρὸς τὸν ἔπειτα |exhaustion |at one's prime; παρασκευάζειν.  
 |in season  
 γένοιτο δ' ἂν |harmonious|rest ὑποτοῖς, εἰ τοῖς τοιούτοις  
 τῶν |a reading |associate with, .ῆ μόνον ἐκ τοῦ |urbane,  
 |refined  
 τε καὶ |graceful |naked, bare, ἕξει τὴν |evocation; pas-|λλά  
 |time, persuasion  
 τινα καὶ |spectator, con-|unmusical, ὑπιδέξεται, οἷόν τι καὶ  
 |temptation |unrefined  
 περὶ τῶνδε τῶν |piece of writing φρονήσειν ὑπολαμβάνω·  
 οὐ γὰρ μόνον τὸ ξένον τῆς |proposal; subject; ἡ-|graceful τῆς  
 |pothesis  
 |plan, preference |attractive; ἔσται αὐτοῖς οὐδ' ὅτι |lie  
 |causing  
 ποικίλα |persuasive .ε καὶ |accordant with truth' ,αμεν, ἀλλ' ὅτι

## 1.1-4

Men interested in athletics and in the care of their bodies think not only of condition and exercise but also of relaxation in season; in fact, they consider this the principal part of training. In like manner students, I think, after much reading of serious works may profitably relax their minds and put them in better trim for future labour. It would be appropriate recreation for them if they were to take up the sort of reading that, instead of affording just pure amusement based on wit and humour, also boasts a little food for thought that the Muses would not altogether spurn; and I think they will consider the present work something of the kind. They will find it enticing not only for the novelty of its subject, for the humour of its plan and because I tell all kinds of lies in a plausible and specious way, but

*vocabulary*

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture

αἰνίσσομαι hint, speak in riddles

ἄκωμῶδης not ridiculed

ἄληθεύω speak truth; be true

ἀνάγνωσις -εως (f) recognition,  
reading

ἀποδημία foreign travel

ἀρχηγός original; chief, originator

ἄτερπής joyless, unpleasant

~terpsichorean

βίος life ~biology

βωμολοχία coarse humor

γνώριμος known (a person) ~gnostic

διδάσκαλος teacher

διηγέομαι detail, describe

δουλεία slavery

δούλειος of a slave

ζῶον being, animal; picture

ἱστορέω inquire; relate

καινότης -τος (f, 3) newness

μέγεθος -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)

~megaton

μονόφθαλμος one-eyed

μυθώδης (ῶ) mythic

ὅμως anyway, nevertheless

ὄνομαστί by name

παλαιός old ~paleo

παράδοξος incredible

πλάνη wandering

πλάσσω form ~plaster

πολυκέφαλος many-headed

προαιρέω produce; (m) prefer

συγγραφεύς -ως (m) historian

συγγράφω write down

συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis

τεράστιος monstrous, prodigious

ὑπόθεσις -εως (f) proposal; subject;  
hypothesis

φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving

ψεῦδος -ους (n, 3) a lie ~pseudo-

ώμοτης -τος (f, 3) rawness, crudity

ώμοφάγος raw flesh-eating

ώμόφαγος raw flesh-eating

καὶ τῶν ἱστορουμένων ἕκαστον οὐκ ἀκωμωδῆτως ῥηνικται  
 πρὸς τινὰς τῶν παλαιῶν ποιητῶν τε καὶ συγγραφέων καὶ  
 φιλοσόφων πολλὰ τεράστια καὶ μυθώδη συγγεγραφότων,  
 οὓς καὶ ὀνομαστὶ ἂν ἔγραφον, εἰ μὴ καὶ αὐτῷ σοι ἐκ τῆς  
 ἀναγνώσεως φανεῖσθαι ἔμελλον ὧν Κτησίας ὁ Κτησιόχου  
 ὁ Κνίδιος, ὃς συνέγραψεν περὶ τῆς Ἰνδῶν χώρας καὶ τῶν  
 παρ' αὐτοῖς ἃ μήτε αὐτὸς εἶδεν μήτε ἄλλου ἀληθεύοντος  
 ἤκουσεν. ἔγραψε δὲ καὶ Ἰαμβούλος περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ  
 θαλάττῃ πολλὰ παράδοξα, γνώριμον μὲν ἅπασιν τὸ ψεῦδος  
 πλασάμενος, οὐκ ἀτερπῇ δὲ ὅμως συνθεῖς τὴν ὑπόθεσιν.

Πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τὰ αὐτὰ τούτοις προελόμενοι  
 συνέγραψαν ὥς δὴ τινὰς ἑαυτῶν πλάνας τε καὶ  
 ἀποδημίας, θηρίων τε μεγέθη ἱστοροῦντες καὶ ἀνθρώπων  
 ὠμότητας καὶ βίων καινότητας· ἀρχηγὸς δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ  
 διδάσκαλος τῆς τοιαύτης βωμολοχίας ὁ τοῦ Ὀμήρου  
 Ὀδυσσεύς, τοῖς περὶ τὸν Ἀλκίονιν διηγούμενος ἀνέμων τε  
 δουλείαν καὶ μονοφθάλμους καὶ ὠμοφάγους καὶ ἀγρίους  
 τινὰς ἀνθρώπους, ἔτι δὲ πολυκέφαλα ζῶα καὶ τὰς ὑπὸ



καὶ τῶν |inquire; relate ἑκάστον οὐκ |not ridiculed |hint  
 πρὸς τινὰς τῶν παλαιῶν ποιητῶν τε καὶ |historian καὶ  
 |wisdom-loving πολλὰ |monstrous, ..... |mythic |write down ,  
 οὐς καὶ |by name ἂν ἔγραφον, εἰ μὴ καὶ αὐτῷ σοι ἐκ τῆς  
 |recognition, φανείσθαι ἔμελλον ὦν Κτησίας ὁ Κτησιόχου  
 |reading  
 ὁ Κνίδιος, ὃς |write down περὶ τῆς Ἰνδῶν χώρας καὶ τῶν  
 παρ' αὐτοῖς ἃ μῆτε αὐτὸς εἶδεν μῆτε ἄλλον |speak truth; be  
 |true ἤκουσεν. ἔγραψε δὲ καὶ Ἰαμβοῦλος περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ  
 θαλάττῃ πολλὰ |incredible , |known (a person) ἄσι τὸ |a lie  
 |form , οὐκ |joyless δὲ ὅμως |hearken, mark |proposal; . sub-  
 |ject; hypothesis  
 Πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τὰ αὐτὰ τούτοις |produce; (m) prefer  
 |write down ὥς δὴ τινὰς ἐαυτῶν |wandering ἔε καὶ  
 ἀποδημίας, θηρίων τε μεγέθη |inquire; relate καὶ ἀνθρώπων  
 |rawness, καὶ βίων |newness |original; chief, αὐτοῖς καὶ  
 |crudity |originator  
 διδάσκαλος τῆς τοιαύτης |coarse humor ὁ τοῦ Ὀμήρου  
 Ὀδυσσεύς, τοῖς περὶ τὸν Ἀλκίνουν διηγούμενος ἀνέμων τε  
 δουλείαν καὶ |one-eyed καὶ ὠμοφάγους καὶ |wild,  
 |savage τινὰς ἀνθρώπους, ἔτι δὲ |many-headed ζῶα καὶ τὰς ὑπὸ

also because everything in my story is a more or less comical parody of one or another of the poets, historians and philosophers of old, who have written much that smacks of miracles and fables. I would cite them by name, were it not that you yourself will recognise them from your reading. One of them is Ctesias, son of Ctesiochus, of Cnidos, who wrote a great deal about India and its characteristics that he had never seen himself nor heard from anyone else with a reputation for truthfulness. Iambulus also wrote much that was strange about the countries in the great sea: he made up a falsehood that is patent to everybody, but wrote a story that is not uninteresting for all that.

Many others, with the same intent, have written about imaginary travels and journeys of theirs, telling of huge beasts, cruel men and strange ways of living. Their guide and instructor in this sort of charlatanry is Homer's Odysseus, who tells Alcinous and his court about winds in bondage, one-eyed men, cannibals and savages; also about animals with many heads, and transformations of his comrades wrought with

*vocabulary*

ἀληθεύω speak truth; be true  
 ἄμοιρος bereft, exempt  
 ἀξιόλογος remarkable  
 ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
 ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail  
 διόπερ therefore  
 ἐκφεύγω flee from, escape ~fugitive  
 ἐλευθερία freedom  
 εὐγνώμων considerate, sensible  
 ἰδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman  
 ἱστορέω inquire; relate  
 κατηγορία accusation  
 κενοδοξία vanity, conceit  
 μέφομαι blame; reject  
 μεταβολή change, exchange  
 μηδαμὸς no one

μυθολογέω (ῶ) tell stories  
 ὁμολογέω agree with/to  
 σπουδάζω be busy, earnest ~repudiate  
 συγγράφω write down  
 συνήθης habitual, intimate  
 σφόδρα very much  
 τερατεύομαι speak of marvels, magic words  
 τοίνυν well, then  
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
 φαρμακεύς -ος (m) poisoner, sorcerer  
 φάρμακον drug, potion ~pharmacy  
 φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study  
 ψεῦδος -ους (n, 3) a lie ~pseudo-  
 ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

φαρμάκων τῶν ἐταίρων μεταβολάς, οἷς πολλὰ ἐκείνος πρὸς ἰδιώτας ἀνθρώπους τοὺς Φαίακας ἐτερατεύσατο.

Τούτοις οὖν ἐντυχὼν ἅπασιν, τοῦ ψεύσασθαι μὲν οὐ σφόδρα τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐμεμφάμην, ὁρῶν ἤδη σύνηθες ὄν τοῦτο καὶ τοῖς φιλοσοφεῖν ὑπischynουμένοις· ἐκείνο δὲ αὐτῶν ἐθαύμασα, εἰ ἐνόμιζον λήσειν οὐκ ἀληθῇ συγγράφοντες. διόπερ καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπὸ κενοδοξίας ἀπολιπεῖν τι σπουδάσας τοῖς μεθ' ἡμᾶς, ἵνα μὴ μόνος ἄμοιρος ὦ τῆς ἐν τῷ μυθολογεῖν ἐλευθερίας, ἐπεὶ μηδὲν ἀληθὲς ἱστορεῖν εἶχον οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐπεπόνθειν ἀξιόλογον ἐπὶ τὸ ψεῦδος ἐτραπόμην πολὺ τῶν ἄλλων εὐγνωμονέστερον· καὶ ἐν γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο ἀληθεύσω λέγων ὅτι ψεύδομαι. οὕτω δ' ἂν μοι δοκῶ καὶ τὴν παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων κατηγορίαν ἐκφυγεῖν αὐτὸς ὁμολογῶν μηδὲν ἀληθὲς λέγειν. γράφω τοίνυν περὶ ὧν μήτε εἶδον μήτε ἔπαθον μήτε παρ' ἄλλων ἐπυθόμην, ἔτι δὲ μήτε ὅλως ὄντων μήτε τὴν ἀρχὴν γενέσθαι δυναμένων. διὸ δεῖ τοὺς ἐντυγχάνοντας μηδαμῶς πιστεύειν αὐτοῖς.

φαρμάκων τῶν ἐταίρων |change, exchange, οἷς πολλὰ ἐκεῖνος  
 πρὸς |private; a layman... οὖς τοὺς Φαίακας |speak of marvels, magic words  
 Τούτοις οὖν ἐντυχὼν ἅπασιν, τοῦ |be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 |very much οὖς ἄνδρας |blame; reject, ὁρῶν ἤδη |habitual, intimate  
 ὃν τοῦτο καὶ τοῖς |philosophize, |promise, agree ἐκεῖνο  
 |study  
 δὲ αὐτῶν ἐθαύμασα, εἰ ἐνόμιζον λήσειν οὐκ ἀληθῆ  
 |write down |therefore καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπὸ |vanity, conceit  
 ἀπολιπεῖν τι |be busy, earnest ἵς μεθ' ἡμᾶς, ἵνα μὴ μόνος  
 |bereft, ὦ τῆς ἐν τῷ |tell stories ἐλευθερίας, ἐπεὶ μηδὲν  
 |exempt  
 ἀληθὲς |inquire; εἶχον οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐπεπόνθειν |remarkable ἐπὶ  
 |relate  
 τὸ |a lie ἐτραπόμην πολὺ τῶν ἄλλων |considerate, sensible  
 καὶ ἐν γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο |speak λέγων ὅτι |be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 |truth; be  
 δ' ἂν μοι δοκῶ καὶ τῇν παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων |accusation  
 |flee αὐτὸς |agree with/to, ἤδὲν ἀληθὲς λέγειν. γράφω  
 |well, then ρὶ ὧν μήτε εἶδον μήτε ἔπαθον μήτε παρ' ἄλλων  
 ἐπυθόμην, ἔτι δὲ μήτε ὅλως ὄντων μήτε τὴν ἀρχὴν  
 γενέσθαι δυναμένων. διὸ δεῖ τοὺς ἐντυγχάνοντας |no one  
 πιστεύειν αὐτοῖς.

drugs. This stuff, and much more like it, is what our friend humbugged the illiterate Phaeacians with!

Well, on reading all these authors, I did not find much fault with them for their lying, as I saw that this was already a common practice even among men who profess philosophy. I did wonder, though, that they thought that they could write untruths and not get caught at it. Therefore, as I myself, thanks to my vanity, was eager to hand something down to posterity, that I might not be the only one excluded from the privileges of poetic licence, and as I had nothing true to tell, not having had any adventures of significance, I took to lying. But my lying is far more honest than theirs, for though I tell the truth in nothing else, I shall at least be truthful in saying that I am a liar. I think I can escape the censure of the world by my own admission that I am not telling a word of truth. Be it understood, then, that I am writing about things which I have neither seen nor had to do with nor learned from others—which, in fact, do not exist at all and, in the nature of things, cannot exist. Therefore my readers should on no account believe in them.

*vocabulary*

**ἄκατος** (f) boat  
**ἀνίσχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἀποδημία** foreign travel  
**αὐξάνω** strengthen  
**βίαιος** by force  
**διάνοια** a thought; intelligence  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after  
 ~genus  
**ἐπιδίδωμι** give, give with, give reciprocally ~donate  
**ἐπιθυμία** (ῥ) desire, thing desired  
**ἐσπέριος** evening, western ~west  
**ζόφος** gloom; gloom of the setting sun  
**ἡλικιώτης** -ου (m, 1) equal in age, contemporary  
**καινέω** freshen, innovate, make strange  
**καινός** new, fresh, strange  
**καινόω** freshen, innovate, make strange  
**κρατύνω** strengthen

**κυβερνήτης** -ου (m, 1) steersman, governor ~govern  
**κύμα** -τος (n, 3) wave; embryo  
 ~accumulate  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**μισθώω** rent out; (pass) be hired  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**οὔριος** with a fair wind  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with  
**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
**περιεργία** futility, curiosity, meddling  
**πότε** when?  
**προσποιέω** give over to; pretend  
 ~poet  
**σιτίον** (ι) grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**στήλη** post, column  
**σφόδρα** very much  
**ὑπόθεσις** -εως (f) proposal; subject; hypothesis  
**ὑποφαίνω** show a little ~photon  
**ὠκεανός** ocean

## 1.5-7

Ὅρμηθεὶς γάρ ποτε ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείων στηλῶν καὶ ἀφείς  
εἰς τὸν ἐσπέριον ὠκεανὸν οὐρίῳ ἀνέμῳ τὸν πλοῦν  
ἐποιούμην. αἰτία δέ μοι τῆς ἀποδημίας καὶ ὑπόθεσις ἡ  
τῆς διανοίας περιεργία καὶ πραγμάτων καινῶν ἐπιθυμία  
καὶ τὸ βούλεσθαι μαθεῖν τί τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν τοῦ ὠκεανοῦ  
καὶ τίνες οἱ πέραν κατοικοῦντες ἄνθρωποι. τούτου  
γέ τοι ἔνεκα πάμπολλα μὲν σιτία ἐνεβαλόμην, ἱκανὸν  
δὲ καὶ ὕδωρ ἐνεθέμην. πεντήκοντα δὲ τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν  
προσεποιησάμην τὴν αὐτὴν ἐμοὶ γνώμην ἔχοντας,  
ἔτι δὲ καὶ ὅπλων πολὺ τι πλῆθος παρεσκευασάμην  
καὶ κυβερνήτην τὸν ἄριστον μισθῷ μεγάλῳ πείσας  
παρέλαβον καὶ τὴν ναῦν ἄκατος δὲ ἦν ὡς πρὸς μέγαν καὶ  
βίαιον πλοῦν ἐκρατυνάμην.

Ἡμέραν οὖν καὶ νύκτα οὐρίῳ πλέοντες ἔτι τῆς γῆς  
ὑποφαινομένης οὐ σφόδρα βιαίως ἀνηγόμεθα, τῆς  
ἐπιούσης δὲ ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντι ὃ τε ἄνεμος ἐπεδίδου καὶ  
τὸ κῦμα ἠϋξάνετο καὶ ζόφος ἐπεγίνετο καὶ οὐκέτ’



1.5-7

Ὅρμηθεις γάρ ποτε ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείων |post, column καὶ ἀφεις  
 εἰς τὸν |evening, |ocean οὐρίῳ ἀνέμῳ τὸν πλοῦν  
 |western  
 ἐποιούμην. αἰτία δέ μοι τῆς ἀποδημίας καὶ |proposal; sub-  
 |ject; hypothesis  
 τῆς |a thought;futility, curios- |πραγμάτων καινῶν ἐπιθυμία  
 |intelli- |ity, meddling  
 |gence  
 καὶ τὸ βούλεσθαι μαθεῖν τί τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν τοῦ |ocean  
 καὶ τίνες οἱ |across κατοικοῦντες ἄνθρωποι. τούτου  
 γέ τοι ἔνεκα πάμπολλα μὲν |grain, |throw in; inspire |ανὸν  
 |bread,  
 δέ καὶ ὕδωρ |load; mp;fifty |food δὲ τῶν |equal in age,  
 |take to heart |contemporary  
 |give over to; pretend τὴν αὐτὴν ἐμοὶ γνώμην ἔχοντας,  
 ἔτι δὲ καὶ |tool πολὺ τι πλῆθος παρεσκευασάμην  
 καὶ |steersman, τὸν ἄριστον μισθῷ μεγάλῳ πείσας  
 |governor  
 |receive, undertake, ἡν ναῦν |boat δὲ ἦν ὡς πρὸς μέγαν καὶ  
 |associate with  
 |by force |λοῦν |strengthen .  
 Ἡμέραν οὖν καὶ νύκτα οὐρίῳ πλέοντες ἔτι τῆς γῆς  
 |show a little οὐ |very much |by force ἀνηγόμεθα, τῆς  
 |lie upon; approach |λίῳ |raise; |ὁ τε ἄνεμος |give, give with, give recip-  
 |endure |rocallly  
 τὸ |wave; |strengthen καὶ |gloom |succeed καὶ οὐκέτ'  
 |embryo

## 1.5-7

Once upon a time, setting out from the Pillars of Hercules and heading for the western ocean with a fair wind, I went a-voyaging. The motive and purpose of my journey lay in my intellectual activity and desire for adventure, and in my wish to find out what the end of the ocean was, and who the people were that lived on the other side. On this account I put aboard a good store of provisions, stowed water enough, enlisted in the venture fifty of my acquaintances who were like-minded with myself, got together also a great quantity of arms, shipped the best sailing-master to be had at a big inducement, and put my boat—she was a pinnace—in trim for a long and difficult voyage.

Well, for a day and a night we sailed before the wind without making very much offing, as land was still dimly in sight; but at sunrise on the second day the wind freshened, the sea rose, darkness came on, and before we knew it we could no



Προσσχόντες οὖν καὶ ἀποβάντες ὡς ἂν ἐκ μακρᾶς ταλαιπωρίας πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἐπὶ γῆς ἐκεῖμεθα (p. 20)

*vocabulary*

άμυδρός obscure, vague  
 άνέρχομαι go up; return  
 άποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
 άφνω suddenly, surprisingly  
 γράμμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter  
 δασύς hairy, brushy  
 διανίστημι awaken  
 έβδομήκοντα 70  
 εκλάμπω shine forth  
 εκτριβώ (ι) rub out  
 έννέα nine  
 επιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow  
 ~trophy  
 ζάλη storm  
 ίχνος -εος (n, 3) track, trace  
 καθοράω look down ~panorama  
 καταγράφω scratch; write in  
 καταπαύω stop, restrain ~pause  
 κατασκοπέω watch, spy on  
 κατασκοπή spying  
 κύμα -τος (n, 3) wave; embryo  
 ~accumulate

όγδοηκοστός eightieth  
 όθόνη linen  
 όμως anyway, nevertheless  
 παραμένω stay with ~remain  
 περιηχέω ring all around  
 πέτρα rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
 πλεθριαίος 30 m in size ~plethora  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 πνέω breathe, blow ~apnea  
 προέρχομαι proceed, come out  
 προσέχω direct to; think about  
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle  
 στήλη post, column  
 ταλαιπωρία hard work, hardship  
 τραχύς (ά) rough ~trachea  
 ύλη (ι) forest, firewood  
 ύψηλός high  
 φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery  
 χειμάζω overwinter

οὐδὲ στείλαι τὴν ὀθόνην δυνατόν ἦν. ἐπιτρέψαντες οὖν τῷ πνέοντι καὶ παραδόντες ἑαυτοὺς ἐχειμαζόμεθα ἡμέρας ἑννέα καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα, τῇ ὀγδοηκοστῇ δὲ ἄφνω ἐκλάμψαντος ἡλίου καθορώμεν οὐ πόρρω νῆσον ὑψηλὴν καὶ δασεῖαν, οὐ τραχεῖ περιηχουμένην τῷ κύματι· καὶ γὰρ ἤδη τὸ πολὺ τῆς ζάλης κατεπαύετο.

Προσσχόντες οὖν καὶ ἀποβάντες ὥς ἂν ἐκ μακρᾶς ταιλαιπωρίας πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἐπὶ γῆς ἐκεῖμεθα, διαναστάντες δὲ ὅμως ἀπεκρίναμεν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τριάκοντα μὲν φύλακας τῆς νεῶς παραμένειν, εἴκοσι δὲ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἀνελθεῖν ἐπὶ κατασκοπῇ τῶν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ. προελθόντες δὲ ὅσον σταδίους τρεῖς ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης δι' ὕλης ὀρώμεν τινα στήλην χαλκοῦ πεποιημένην, Ἑλληνικοῖς γράμμασιν καταγεγραμμένην, ἀμυδροῖς δὲ καὶ ἐκτετριμμένοις, λέγουσαν «Ἄχρι τούτων Ἡρακλῆς καὶ Διόνυσος ἀφίκοντο.» ἦν δὲ καὶ ἵχνη δύο πλησίον ἐπὶ πέτρας, τὸ μὲν πλεθριαῖον, τὸ δὲ ἕλαττον ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, τὸ μὲν τοῦ Διονύσου, τὸ μικρότερον, θάτερον δὲ Ἡρακλέους.

οὐδὲ |prepare, send,|linen δυνατὸν ἦν. |entrust, decide, allow  
|furl  
οὖν τῷ |breathe, blow` παραδόντες ἑαυτοὺς |overwinter  
ἡμέρας |nine καὶ |70 , τῇ |eightieth δὲ |suddenly, surprisingly  
|shine forth ἡλίου |look down οὐ |forward, in, the ' ὑψηλὴν  
|future; far  
καὶ |hairy, , οὐ |rough |ring all around τῷ κύματι· καὶ γὰρ  
|brushy  
ἦδη τὸ πολὺ τῆς |storm |stop, restrain .  
|direct to; think οὖν καὶ ἀποβάντες ὡς ἂν ἐκ μακρᾶς  
|about  
ταλαιπωρίας πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἐπὶ γῆς ἐκείμεθα,  
|awaken δὲ ὅμως ἀπεκρίναμεν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν  
τριάκοντα μὲν |guard; τῆς νεὼς |stay with , εἴκοσι  
|sentry  
δὲ σὺν ἐμοὶ |go up; return.` κατασκοπῇ τῶν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ.  
|proceed, come οὐτ' ὅσον σταδίους τρεῖς ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης  
δι' ὕλης ὀρώμεν τινα |post, χαλκοῦ πεποιημένην,  
|column  
Ἑλληνικοῖς |writing, |scratch; write in , |obscure, δὲ  
|letter |vague  
καὶ |rub out , λέγουσαν «Ἄχρι τούτων Ἡρακλῆς  
καὶ Διόνυσος ἀφίκοντο.» ἦν δὲ καὶ |track, ὕο πλησίον ἐπὶ  
|trace  
πέτρας, τὸ μὲν |30 m in size , τὸ δὲ ἔλαττον ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, τὸ  
μὲν τοῦ Διονύσου, τὸ μικρότερον, θάτερον δὲ Ἡρακλέους.

longer even get our canvas in. Committing ourselves to the gale and giving up, we drove for seventy-nine days. On the eightieth day, however, the sun came out suddenly and at no great distance we saw a high, wooded island ringed about with sounding surf, which, however, was not rough, as already the worst of the storm was abating.

Putting in and going ashore, we lay on the ground for some time in consequence of our long misery, but finally we arose and told off thirty of our number to stay and guard the ship and twenty to go inland with me and look over the island. When we had gone forward through the wood about three furlongs from the sea, we saw a slab of bronze, inscribed with Greek letters, faint and obliterated, which said: “To this point came Hercules and Dionysus.” There were also two footprints in the rock close by, one of which was a hundred feet long, the other less — to my thinking, the smaller one was left by Dionysus, the other



προσκυνήσαντες δ' οὖν προῆμεν· οὕτω δὲ πολὺ παρήμεν καὶ ἐφιστάμεθα ποταμῷ οἶνον ῥέοντι ὁμοιότατον μάλιστα οἶόσπερ ὁ Χιὸς ἐστίν. (p. 24)

*vocabulary*

ἀγρεύω catch (prey, fish)  
 ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course  
 ἄμπελος (f) vine  
 ἀνατέμνω cut up  
 ἄνειμι go up, inland, to, back ~ion  
 ἀπορρέω flow, fall off  
 ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful  
 βότρυς cluster of grapes  
 γεῦσις -τος (f) taste  
 γοῦν at least then  
 διαυγής translucent  
 ἐνεσθίω eat hastily  
 ἐνιαχοῦ in some places  
 ἐπίγραμμα -τος (n, 3) inscription, title,  
 maker's signature  
 ἐπιδημία a stay, visit  
 ἐπινοέω intend  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
 ἰχθύς -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
 καταμανθάνω examine, observe  
 κεράννυμι (ū) mix ~crater  
 μεθύσκω (mp) get drunk

μεστός full  
 ναυσίπορος navigable  
 ὅθεν whence  
 οἰνοφαγία vinous food  
 οὐπω no longer  
 παραμίγνυμι mix in  
 παρήκω lie along; of time: to be past  
 παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
 πηγὴ headwaters, fountain  
 πηγός stout, mighty  
 πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of  
 ~plethora  
 προΐημι send forth, abandon  
 προσέοικα resemble  
 προσκυνέω kow tow to; kiss  
 ῥεῦμα -τος (n, 3) flow  
 ῥέω flow ~rheostat  
 ῥίζα root ~rhizome  
 σημεῖον sign  
 σταγών -τος (f, 3) drop  
 στήλη post, column  
 σφοδρός vehement  
 τρύξις -γός (f) wine must, lees  
 χροά skin, surface, complexion

Προσκυνήσαντες δ' οὖν προῆμεν· οὐπω δὲ πολὺ παρήμεν καὶ ἐφιστάμεθα ποταμῷ οἶνον ῥέοντι ὁμοιότατον μάλιστα οἶόσπερ ὁ Χιὸς ἐστίν. ἄφθονον δὲ ἦν τὸ ῥεῦμα καὶ πολὺ, ὥστε ἐνιαχοῦ καὶ ναυσίπορον εἶναι δύνασθαι. ἐπεὶ οὖν ἡμῖν πολὺ μᾶλλον πιστεύειν τῷ ἐπὶ τῆς στήλης ἐπιγράμματι, ὁρῶσι τὰ σημεῖα τῆς Διονύσου ἐπιδημίας.

Δόξαν δέ μοι καὶ ὅθεν ἄρχεται ὁ ποταμὸς καταμαθεῖν, ἀνήειν παρὰ τὸ ῥεῦμα, καὶ πηγὴν μὲν οὐδεμίαν εἶρον αὐτοῦ, πολλὰς δὲ καὶ μεγάλας ἀμπέλους, πλήρεις βοτρυῶν, παρὰ δὲ τὴν ῥίζαν ἐκάστην ἀπέρρει σταγῶν οἶνου διαυγοῦς, ἀφ' ὧν ἐγίνετο ὁ ποταμός. ἦν δὲ καὶ ἰχθὺς ἐν αὐτῷ πολλοὺς ἰδεῖν, οἶνω μάλιστα καὶ τὴν χροάν καὶ τὴν γεῦσιν προσεοικότας· ἡμεῖς γοῦν ἀγρεύσαντες αὐτῶν τινὰς καὶ ἐμφαγόντες ἐμεθύσθημεν· ἀμέλει καὶ ἀνατεμόντες αὐτοὺς εὐρίσκομεν τρυγὸς μεστούς. ὕστερον μέντοι ἐπινοήσαντες τοὺς ἄλλους ἰχθὺς, τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος παραμιγνύντες ἐκεράννυμεν τὸ σφοδρὸν τῆς οἰνοφαγίας.



Προσκυνήσαντες δ' οὖν προῆμεν· οὐπω δὲ πολὺ παρήμεν  
 καὶ ἐφιστάμεθα ποταμῷ οἶνον |flow ὁμοιότατον μάλιστα  
 οἰόσπερ ὁ Χιὸς ἐστιν. |ungrudging, |plentiful ἦν τὸ |flow καὶ  
 πολὺ, ὥστε |in some places|navigable εἶναι δύνασθαι. ἐπει  
 οὖν ἡμῖν πολὺ μᾶλλον πιστεύειν τῷ ἐπὶ τῆς |post,  
 |column  
 |inscription, title, ὡσι τὰ σημεῖα τῆς Διονύσου |a stay, visit .  
 |maker's signature  
 Δόξαν δέ μοι καὶ ὅθεν ἄρχεται ὁ ποταμὸς |examine, |observe ,  
 |go up, inland, |to, back τὸ |flow , καὶ πηγὴν μὲν οὐδεμίαν εἶδον  
 αὐτοῦ, πολλὰς δὲ καὶ μεγάλας |vine , |full, complete;  
 |(+gen) full of  
 βοτρώων, παρὰ δὲ τὴν |root ἐκάστην ἀπέρρει |drop  
 οἶνον |translucent ἀφ' ὧν ἐγίνετο ὁ ποταμός. ἦν δὲ καὶ  
 ἰχθῦς ἐν αὐτῷ πολλοὺς ἰδεῖν, οἶνω μάλιστα καὶ τὴν |skin,  
 |color  
 καὶ τὴν |taste |resemble ἡμεῖς |at least|catch (prey, fish)  
 |then  
 αὐτῶν τινὰς καὶ ἐμφαγόντες |(mp) get drunk ἀμέλει καὶ  
 |cut up αὐτοὺς εὐρίσκομεν |wine |full . ὕστερον  
 |must,  
 |lees  
 μέντοι |intend τοὺς ἄλλους ἰχθῦς, τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 ὕδατος |mix in |mix τὸ |vehement τῆς  
 |vinous food .

by Hercules.

We did obeisance and went on, but had not gone far when we came upon a river of wine, just as like as could be to Chian. The stream was large and full, so that in places it was actually navigable. Thus we could not help having much greater faith in the inscription on the slab, seeing the evidence of Dionysus' visit.

I Resolved to find out where the river took its rise, and went up along the stream. What I found was not a source, but a number of large grapevines, full of clusters; beside the root of each flowed a spring of clear wine, and the springs gave rise to the river. There were many fish to be seen in it, very similar to wine in colour and in taste. In fact, on catching and eating some of them, we became drunk, and when we cut into them we found them full of lees, of course. Later on, we bethought ourselves to mix with them the other kind of fish, those from the water, and so temper the strength of our edible wine.



αἱ δὲ καὶ μίγνυσθαι ἡμῖν ἐπεθύμουν· καὶ δύο τινὲς τῶν ἐταίρων πλησιάσαντες αὐταῖς οὐκέτι ἀπελύοντο, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων ἐδέδεντο· (p. 28)

*vocabulary*

ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀλγέω suffer ~analgesic  
 ἄμπελος (f) vine  
 ἄνω (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
 ἀποδενδρόομαι become a tree  
 ἀποσπάω tear/drag away  
 ἄρτι at the same time  
 ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute  
 βοάω shout  
 βότρυς cluster of grapes  
 δάκτυλος finger, toe  
 δεξιόομαι salute, greet  
 διαβατός crossable, fordable  
 διαπεράω go across, through  
 δρέπω (mid) pick, pluck ~tear  
 ἐκφύω spring from ~physics  
 ἑλιξ twisted ~helix

ἐπιθυμέω (ῶ) wish, covet  
 εὐερνής sprouting, flourishing  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 κλάδος branch, shoot  
 κομάω have long hair  
 λαγών -όνος (f, 3) flank  
 μεθύσκω (mp) get drunk  
 μεθύω be soaked, drunk ~mead  
 μεστός full  
 παράφορος borne off  
 παχύς thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm  
 προΐημι send forth, abandon  
 προσδοκάω expect  
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
 στέλεχος root crown; trunk  
 τέλειος finished ~apostle  
 τεράστιος monstrous, prodigious  
 φύλλον leaf

## 1.8-10

Τότε δὲ τὸν ποταμὸν διαπεράσαντες ἦ διαβατὸς ἦν, εὖρομεν ἀμπέλων χρῆμα τεράστιον· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς, ὁ στέλεχος αὐτὸς εὐερνῆς καὶ παχύς, τὸ δὲ ἄνω γυναικες ἦσαν, ὅσον ἐκ τῶν λαγόνων ἅπαντα ἔχουσαι τέλεια τοι, αὐτὴν παρ' ἡμῖν τὴν Δάφνην γράφουσιν ἄρτι τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος καταλαμβάνοντος ἀποδενδρουμένην. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν δακτύλων ἄκρων ἐξεφύοντο αὐταῖς οἱ κλάδοι καὶ μεστοὶ ἦσαν βοτρύων. καὶ μὴν καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐκόμων ἔλιξί τε καὶ φύλλοις καὶ βότρυσι.

Προσελθόντας δὲ ἡμᾶς ἡσπάζοντο καὶ ἐδεξιούντο, αἱ μὲν Λύδιον, αἱ δ' Ἰνδικήν, αἱ πλείεσται δὲ τὴν Ἑλλάδα φωνὴν προιέμεναι. καὶ ἐφίλουν δὲ ἡμᾶς τοῖς στόμασιν· ὁ δὲ φιληθεὶς αὐτίκα ἐμέθυεν καὶ παράφορος ἦν. δρέπεσθαι μέντοι οὐ παρείχον τοῦ καρποῦ, ἀλλ' ἥλγουν καὶ ἐβόων ἀποσπωμένου.

Αἱ δὲ καὶ μίγνυσθαι ἡμῖν ἐπεθύμουν· καὶ δύο τινὲς

1.8-10

Τότε δὲ τὸν ποταμὸν |go across, through |̂ |crossable, |̂ν,  
 |fordable  
 εὔρομεν |vine χρῆμα |monstrous, |̂ν  
 |prodigious τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς  
 γῆς, ὁ |root crown; trunk |̂ sprouting, |̂  
 |flourishing |̂ thick, stout, δὲ ἄνω  
 |clotted  
 γυναικες ἦσαν, ὅσον ἐκ τῶν |flank ἅπαντα ἔχουσαι  
 |finished -οι, αὐτήν παρ' ἡμῖν τὴν Δάφνην γράφουσιν |at the same time  
 τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος |seize, understand, catch, |̂ become a tree  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν |finger, toe ἄκρων |spring from |̂ταῖς οἱ |̂ branch,  
 |shoot  
 καὶ |full ἦσαν βοτρυῶν. καὶ μὴν καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς  
 |have long |̂ twisted |̂ καὶ |̂ leaf καὶ |̂ cluster of grapes  
 |hair  
 Προσελθόντας δὲ ἡμᾶς |greet, salute καὶ |̂ salute, greet, αἱ μὲν  
 Λύδιον, αἱ δ' Ἰνδικήν, αἱ πλείεσται δὲ τὴν Ἑλλάδα φωνὴν  
 |send forth, abandon ἔφίλουν δὲ ἡμᾶς τοῖς στόμασιν· ὁ δὲ  
 φιληθεὶς αὐτίκα ἐμέθεν καὶ |borne off ἦν. |(mid) pick, pluck  
 μέντοι οὐ παρείχον τοῦ καρποῦ, ἀλλ' |̂ suffer καὶ |̂ shout  
 |tear/drag away  
 Αἱ δὲ καὶ μίγνυσθαι ἡμῖν |̂ wish, covet καὶ δύο τινὲς

**1.8-10**

Next, after crossing the river at a place where it was fordable, we found something wonderful in grapevines. The part which came out of the ground, the trunk itself, was stout and well-grown, but the upper part was in each case a woman, entirely perfect from the waist up. They were like our pictures of Daphne turning into a tree when Apollo is just catching her. Out of their finger-tips grew the branches, and they were full of grapes. Actually, the hair of their heads was tendrils and leaves and clusters!

When we came up, they welcomed and greeted us, some of them speaking Lydian, some Indian, but the most part Greek. They even kissed us on the lips, and everyone that was kissed at once became reeling drunk. They did not suffer us, however, to gather any of the fruit, but cried out in pain when it was plucked.

They also wanted to have sex with us, and two of my

*vocabulary*

**ἀεροδρομέω** traverse the air  
**ἀήρ ἀέρος** (ἄ, m) mist, air ~air  
**αἰδοῖον** genitals  
**αἰδοῖος** modest, honored  
**ἀμπελομιξία** intercourse with vines  
**ἀμφορεύς** -ος (m) amphora  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολύω** loose, free from ~loose  
**αὐλίζομαι** live, lodge at  
**ἄφνω** suddenly, surprisingly  
**βίαιος** by force  
**δάκτυλος** finger, toe  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**ἑλιξ** twisted ~helix  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἐξαρτάω** hang on, make dependent  
**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after  
 ~genus  
**ἕωθεν** at first light  
**ἡλών** beach  
**ἱστίον** sail ~stand  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
 arrive; be proper  
**καθίημι** (ἦ) speed down upon; take  
 down ~jet

**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**καρποφορέω** bear fruit  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κλάδος** branch, shoot  
**κολπώω** swell, fold  
**μεσημβρία** midday; the south  
**μετεωρίζω** raise; give hope  
**μετέωρος** up in the air ~meteor  
**ὄγδοος** eighth ~octopus  
**ὀθόνη** linen  
**οἰνίζω** resemble wine; (mp) buy wine  
**οὐδέπω** not, not yet  
**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
 ~pelagic  
**περιδινέω** (ῡ) wheel around  
**περιπλέκω** embrace ~complex  
**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**συμφύω** pull together, mend  
**σφόδρα** very much  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three  
**ὕδρεύω** draw water ~hydrogen  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

τῶν ἐταίρων πλησιάσαντες αὐταῖς οὐκέτι ἀπελύοντο, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων ἐδέδεντο· συνεφύοντο γὰρ καὶ συνερριζοῦντο. καὶ ἤδη αὐτοῖς κλάδοι ἐπεφύκεσαν οἱ δάκτυλοι, καὶ ταῖς ἔλιξι περιπλεκόμενοι ὅσον οὐδέπω καὶ αὐτοὶ καρποφορήσειν ἔμελλον.

Καταλιπόντες δὲ αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ναῦν ἐφεύγομεν καὶ τοῖς ἀπολειφθεῖσιν διηγούμεθα ἐλθόντες τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τῶν ἐταίρων τὴν ἀμπελομιξίαν. καὶ δὴ λαβόντες ἀμφορέας τινὰς καὶ ὑδρευσάμενοί τε ἅμα καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ οἰνισάμενοι καὶ αὐτοῦ πλησίον ἐπὶ τῆς ἡόνος αὐλισάμενοι ἔωθεν ἀνήχθημεν οὐ σφόδρα βιαίῳ πνεύματι.

Περὶ μεσημβρίαν δὲ οὐκέτι τῆς νήσου φαινομένης ἄφνω τυφὼν ἐπιγενόμενος καὶ περιδιτήσας τὴν ναῦν καὶ μετεωρίσας ὅσον ἐπὶ σταδίους τριακοσίους οὐκέτι καθήκεν εἰς τὸ πέλαγος, ἀλλ' ἄνω μετέωρον ἐξηρτημένην ἄνεμος ἐμπεσὼν τοῖς ιστίοις ἔφερεν κολπώσας τὴν ὀθόνην. ἐπτὰ δὲ ἡμέρας καὶ τὰς ἴσας νύκτας ἀεροδρομήσαντες, ὀγδόῃ καθορώμεν γῆν τινα μεγάλην ἐν τῷ ἀέρι



τῶν ἐταίρων |bring/be near; αὐταῖς οὐκέτι ἀπελύοντο,  
 |have sex  
 ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων ἐδέδεντο· |pull together, menḁ καὶ  
 συνερριζοῦντο. καὶ ἤδη αὐτοῖς |branch, ἐπεφύκεσαν οἱ  
 |shoot  
 |finger, toe , καὶ ταῖς |twisted embrace ὅσον |not, not yet ἔ  
 αὐτοὶ |bear fruit ἔμελλον.

Καταλιπόντες δὲ αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ναῦν ἐφεύγομεν καὶ τοῖς  
 ἀπολειφθεῖσιν διηγούμεθα ἐλθόντες τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τῶν  
 ἐταίρων τὴν |intercourse with καὶ δὴ λαβόντες |amphora  
 |vines  
 τινὰς καὶ |draw water τε ἅμα καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ  
 |buy wine καὶ αὐτοῦ πλησίον ἐπὶ τῆς |beach |live, lodge at  
 |at first light ἔλθμεν οὐ σφόδρα |by force .νεύματι.

Περὶ |midday; the south οὐκέτι τῆς νήσου φαινομένης |suddenly,  
 |surprisingly  
 τυφῶν |succeed καὶ |wheel around τὴν ναῦν καὶ  
 |raise; give hope ὅν ἐπὶ σταδίους τριακοσίους οὐκέτι καθήκειν  
 εἰς τὸ πέλαγος, ἀλλ' ἄνω |up in the air |hang on, make ἄνεμος  
 |dependent  
 |fall into; attack ἔσail ἔφερεν |swell, fold τὴν |linen . ἐπτά  
 δὲ ἡμέρας καὶ τὰς ἴσας νύκτας |traverse the air , |eighth  
 |look down γῆν τινα μεγάλην ἐν τῷ ἀέρι

comrades who got too close were trapped. They were held tight at their crotches, as if they had set down roots. Already branches had grown from their fingers, tendrils entwined them, and they were on the point of bearing fruit like the others any minute. Leaving them in the lurch, we made off to the boat, and on getting there, told the men we had left behind about everything, including the affair of our comrades with the vines. Then, taking jars, we furnished ourselves not only with water but with wine from the river, encamped for the night on the beach close by, and at daybreak put to sea with a moderate breeze.

About noon, when the island was no longer in sight, a whirlwind suddenly arose, spun the boat about, raised her into the air about three hundred furlongs and did not let her down into the sea again; but while she was hung up aloft a wind struck her sails and drove her ahead with bellying canvas. For seven days and seven nights we sailed the air, and on the eighth day we saw a great country in it,

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
**αὐτόθεν** from that place  
**γεωργέω** farm, till land  
**γύψ** γυπός (m) vulture  
**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after  
 ~genus  
**ἐπίπαν** =ἐπί  
**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect  
**ἱστός** mast, loom ~stand  
**καθάπερ** exactly as  
**καταλάμπω** shine (on)  
**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**ὀρμίζω** anchor, beach

**ὄρνεον** bird ~ornithology  
**ὀχέω** carry; be afflicted with ~wagon  
**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
 ~pelagic  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πορρωτέρω** farther  
**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out  
**προσέοικα** resemble  
**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add  
**πτερόν** feather, wing ~pterodactyl  
**πτερόω** give wings  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**σφαιροειδής** round  
**τρικέφαλος** three-headed  
**ὑλάω** bark (a dog)  
**ὕλη** (ἵ) forest, firewood  
**φάος** φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)  
 eyes ~photon  
**φορτίς** -δος (f) cargo ship ~bear  
**φῶς** man  
**χρόα** skin, surface, complexion

καθάπερ νήσον, λαμπράν καὶ σφαιροειδῇ καὶ φωτὶ  
 μεγάλῳ καταλαμπομένην· προσενεχθέντες δὲ αὐτῇ καὶ  
 ὀρμισάμενοι ἀπέβημεν, ἐπισκοποῦντες δὲ τὴν χώραν  
 εὐρίσκομεν οἰκουμένην τε καὶ γεωργουμένην. ἡμέρας  
 μὲν οὖν οὐδὲν αὐτόθεν ἑωρῶμεν, νυκτὸς δὲ ἐπιγενομένης  
 ἐφαίνοντο ἡμῖν καὶ ἄλλαι πολλαὶ νῆσοι πλησίον, αἱ μὲν  
 μεῖζους, αἱ δὲ μικρότεραι, πυρὶ τὴν χροάν προσεοικυῖαι,  
 καὶ ἄλλη δέ τις γῆ κάτω, καὶ πόλεις ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ ποταμούς  
 ἔχουσα καὶ πελάγη καὶ ὕλας καὶ ὄρη. ταύτην οὖν τὴν καθ'  
 ἡμᾶς οἰκουμένην εἰκάζομεν.

### 1.11-12

Δόξαν δὲ ἡμῖν καὶ ἔτι πορρωτέρω προελθεῖν,  
 συνελήφθημεν τοῖς Ἴππογύποις παρ' αὐτοῖς καλουμένοις  
 ἀπαντήσαντες. οἱ δὲ Ἴππόγυποι οὗτοί εἰσιν ἄνδρες ἐπὶ  
 γυπῶν μεγάλων ὀχούμενοι καὶ καθάπερ ἵπποις τοῖς  
 ὀρνέοις χρώμενοι· μεγάλοι γὰρ οἱ γῦπες καὶ ὥς ἐπίπαν  
 τρικέφαλοι. μάθοι δ' ἂν τις τὸ μέγεθος αὐτῶν ἐντεῦθεν·  
 νεὼς γὰρ μεγάλης φορτίδος ἱστοῦ ἕκαστον τῶν πτερῶν

|exactly as νῆσον, |brilliant καὶ |round καὶ φωτὶ  
 μεγάλῳ |shine (on) |present; resemble; δὲ αὐτῇ καὶ  
 |add  
 |anchor, beach ἀπέβημεν, |look upon, inspect Ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν  
 εὐρίσκομεν οἰκουμένην τε καὶ |farm, till land ἡμέρας  
 μὲν οὖν οὐδὲν |from that place ἔμεν, νυκτὸς δὲ |succeed  
 ἐφαίνοντο ἡμῖν καὶ ἄλλαι πολλαὶ νῆσοι |near , αἱ μὲν  
 μείζους, αἱ δὲ μικρότεραι, πυρὶ τὴν |skin, |resemble  
 |color  
 καὶ ἄλλη δέ τις γῆ κάτω, καὶ πόλεις ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ ποταμούς  
 ἔχουσα καὶ |the open sea ὕλας καὶ ὄρη. ταύτην οὖν τὴν καθ'  
 ἡμᾶς οἰκουμένην |liken;  
 |conjecture

### 1.11-12

Δόξαν δὲ ἡμῖν καὶ ἔτι |farther |proceed, come out  
 |seize, capture; τοῖς Ἱππογύποις παρ' αὐτοῖς καλουμένοις  
 |understand  
 |encounter, come upon Ἐπὶ Ἱππογυποὶ οὗτοί εἰσιν ἄνδρες ἐπὶ  
 |vulture μεγάλων |carry; be afflicted|exactly as ἵπποις τοῖς  
 |with  
 |bird χρώμενοι· μεγάλοι γὰρ οἱ |vulture καὶ ὥς |ἐπεὶ  
 |three-headed μάθοι δ' ἂν τις τὸ |tall, big αὐτῶν |thence  
 νεὼς γὰρ μεγάλης |cargo ship |loom ἕκαστον τῶν πτερῶν

resembling an island, bright and round and shining with a great light. Running in there and anchoring, we went ashore, and on investigating found that the land was inhabited and cultivated. By day nothing was in sight from the place, but as night came on we began to see many other islands hard by, some larger, some smaller, and they were like fire in colour. We also saw another country below, with cities in it and rivers and seas and forests and mountains. This we inferred to be our own world.

**1.11-12**

We determined to go still further inland, but we met what they call the Vulture Dragoons, and were arrested. These are men riding on large vultures and using the birds for horses. The vultures are large and for the most part have three heads: you can judge of their size from the fact that the mast of a large merchantman is not so long or so thick

*vocabulary*

**ἄήρ** ἄέρος (ἄ, m) mist, air ~air  
**ἀναρπάζω** carry off ~harpoon  
**ἄρα** interrogative pcl  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**διέξιμι** pass through; recount ~ion  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater

**καθεύδω** lie down  
**καταβιόω** pass one's life  
**κατορθόω** erect; accomplish  
**παρακελεύομαι** recommend, encourage  
**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm  
**περιπέτομαι** fly around  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command  
**σελήνη** moon  
**στολή** equipment  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture; understand ~epilepsy  
**σύμφημι** assent, concede  
**ὕφοράω** look at from below, suspect

μακρότερον καὶ παχύτερον φέρουσι. τούτοις οὖν τοῖς Ἴππογύποις προστέτακται περιπετομένοις τὴν γῆν, εἴ τις εὐρεθείη ξένος, ἀνάγειν ὡς τὸν βασιλέα· καὶ δὴ καὶ ἡμᾶς συλλαβόντες ἀνάγουσιν ὡς αὐτόν.

Ὁ δὲ θεασάμενος καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς στολῆς εἰκάσας, «Ἥλληνες ἄρα,» ἔφη, «ὕμεις, ὦ ξένοι;» συμφησάντων δέ, «Πῶς οὖν ἀφίκεσθε,» ἔφη, «τοσοῦτον ἀέρα διελθόντες;» καὶ ἡμεῖς τὸ πᾶν αὐτῷ διηγούμεθα· καὶ ὃς ἀρξάμενος τὸ καθ' αὐτόν ἡμῖν διεξήκει, ὡς καὶ αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος ὢν τοῦνομα Ἐνδυμίων ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμετέρας γῆς καθεύδων ἀναρπασθείη ποτὲ καὶ ἀφικόμενος βασιλεύσειε τῆς χώρας· εἶναι δὲ τὴν γῆν ἐκείνην ἔλεγε τὴν ἡμῖν κάτω φαινομένην σελήνην.

Ἀλλὰ θαρρεῖν τε παρεκελεύετο καὶ μηδένα κίνδυνον ὑφορᾶσθαι· πάντα γὰρ ἡμῖν παρέσεσθαι ὦν δεόμεθα. «Ἦν δὲ καὶ κατορθώσω,» ἔφη, «τὸν πόλεμον ὃν ἐκφέρω νῦν πρὸς τοὺς τὸν ἥλιον κατοικοῦντας, ἀπάντων εὐδαιμονέστατα παρ' ἐμοὶ καταβιώσεσθε.» καὶ ἡμεῖς ἠρόμεθα τίνες εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς



μακρότερον καὶ |thick, stout, φέρουσι. τούτοις οὖν τοῖς  
|clotted

Ἵππογύποις |post at, attach to, fly around τὴν γῆν, εἴ τις  
|command

εὐρεθείη ξένος, ἀνάγειν ὡς τὸν βασιλέα· καὶ δὴ καὶ ἡμᾶς

|seize, capture; ἀνάγουσιν ὡς αὐτόν.  
|understand

Ὁ δὲ θεασάμενος καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς |equip- |liken; , <ἥ Ἕλληνες  
|ment |conjecture

|interrogative pcl ἡμεῖς, ὦ ξένοι;» |assent, concede δέ, «Πῶς

οὖν ἀφίκεσθε,» ἔφη, «τοσοῦτον |mist, |pierce, ,» καὶ  
|air |traverse

ἡμεῖς τὸ πᾶν αὐτῷ |detail, καὶ ὃς ἀρξάμενος τὸ καθ'  
|describe

αὐτὸν ἡμῖν |pass through; αἱ αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος ὢν τοῦνομα  
|recount

Ἐνδυμίων ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμετέρας γῆς |lie down |carry off

ποτὲ καὶ ἀφικόμενος |be king τῆς χώρας· εἶναι δὲ τὴν

γῆν ἐκείνην ἔλεγε τὴν ἡμῖν κάτω φαινομένην |moon .

Ἀλλὰ θαρρεῖν τε παρεκελεύετο καὶ μηδένα κίνδυνον

|look at from πάντα γὰρ ἡμῖν παρέσεσθαι ὦν δεόμεθα.  
|below, suspect

«Ἦν δὲ καὶ |erect; ,» ἔφη, «τὸν πόλεμον ὃν  
|accomplish

|carry off νῦν πρὸς τοὺς τὸν ἥλιον κατοικοῦντας, ἀπάντων

|blessed with a παρ' ἐμοὶ |pass one's life .» καὶ ἡμεῖς  
|good genius

ἡρόμεθα τίνες εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς

as the smallest of the quills they have. The Vulture Dragoons are commissioned to fly about the country and bring before the king any stranger they may find, so of course they arrested us and brought us before him.

When he had looked us over and drawn his conclusions from our clothes, he said: "Then you are Greeks, are you, strangers?" and when we assented, "Well, how did you get here, with so much air to cross?" We told him all, and he began and told us about himself: that he too was a human being, Endymion by name, who had once been ravished from our country in his sleep, and on coming there had been made king of the land. He said that his country was the moon that shines down on us.

He urged us to take heart, however, and suspect no danger, for we should have everything that we required. "And if I succeed," said he, "in the war which I am now making on the people of the sun, you shall lead the happiest of lives with me." We asked who the enemy were, and what the quarrel

*vocabulary*

**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir  
**ἀντίπαλος** rival; balanced  
**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἀποικία** colony  
**ἄπορος** impassable, difficult  
**αὔριον** tomorrow  
**βασιλικός** royal  
**γύψ** γυπός (m) vulture  
**διαφορά** disagreement  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear  
**ἐξοδος** (f) leaving, way out  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**κοινωνέω** associate with  
**κωλύω** (ō) hinder, prevent

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὅπλις** -τος (f) arming for war  
**παρασκευή** preparation  
**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare  
**πώρα** aor. give, pf. be fated  
**πότε** when?  
**σελήνη** moon  
**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle  
**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces  
 ~apostle  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
 ~demagogue  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**φθονέω** envy

διαφορᾶς· «Ὁ δὲ Φαέθων,» φησίν, «ὁ τῶν ἐν τῷ ἡλίῳ κατοικούντων βασιλεὺς οἰκεῖται γὰρ δὴ κακείνος ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ σελήνη πολὺν ἤδη πρὸς ἡμᾶς πολεμεῖ χρόνον. ἤρξατο δὲ ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύτης·

«Τῶν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ τῇ ἐμῇ ποτε τοὺς ἀπορωτάτους συναγαγὼν ἐβουλήθην ἀποικίαν εἰς τὸν Ἑωσφόρον στείλαι, ὄντα ἔρημον καὶ ὑπὸ μηδενὸς κατοικούμενον· ὁ τοίνυν Φαέθων φθονήσας ἐκώλυσε τὴν ἀποικίαν κατὰ μέσον τὸν πόρον ἀπαντήσας ἐπὶ τῶν Ἴππομυρμήκων. τότε μὲν οὖν νικηθέντες οὐ γὰρ ἡμεν ἀντίπαλοι τῇ παρασκευῇ ἀνεχωρήσαμεν· νῦν δὲ βούλομαι αὖθις ἐξενεγκεῖν τὸν πόλεμον καὶ ἀποστείλαι τὴν ἀποικίαν. ἣν οὖν ἐθέλητε, κοινωνήσατέ μοι τοῦ στόλου, γῦπας δὲ ὑμῖν ἐγὼ παρέξω τῶν βασιλικῶν ἓνα ἐκάστω καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ὀπλισιν· αὖριον δὲ ποιησόμεθα τὴν ἔξοδον.»

«Οὕτως,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «γιγνέσθω, ἐπειδὴ σοι δοκεῖ.»

|disagreement Ὁ δὲ Φαέθων,» φησὶν, «ὁ τῶν ἐν τῷ ἡλίῳ  
κατοικούντων βασιλεὺς |inhabit γὰρ δὴ κάκεῖνος ὥσπερ  
καὶ ἡ |moon πολὺν ἤδη πρὸς ἡμᾶς πολεμεῖ χρόνον.  
ἤρξατο δὲ ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύτης·

«Τῶν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ τῇ ἐμῇ ποτε τοὺς |impassable, dif-  
|difficult  
|join ἐβουλήθην |colony ἐς τὸν Ἑωσφόρον  
|prepare, send, furl, ημον καὶ ὑπὸ μηδενὸς κατοικούμενον·  
ὁ |well, then ᾤέθων |envy |hinder, |tῇν |colony κατὰ  
|prevent  
μέσον τὸν πόρον |encounter, come upon Ἰππομυρμήκων.  
τότε μὲν οὖν νικηθέντες οὐ γὰρ ἡμεν |rival;  
|balanced  
τῇ |preparation |return, retreat νῦν δὲ βούλομαι αὖθις  
|carry off τὸν πόλεμον καὶ ἀποστεῖλαι τὴν |colony ἣν  
οὖν ἐθέλητε, |associate with μοι τοῦ |expe-  
|dition, |vulture δὲ ὑμῖν  
ἐγὼ παρέξω τῶν |royal ἕνα ἐκείνων καὶ τὴν ἄλλην  
|equipment,  
|forces  
|arming for tomorrow ποιησόμεθα τὴν |leaving, way out  
|war  
«Οὕτως,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «γιγνέσθω, ἐπειδὴ σοι δοκεῖ.»

was about. “Phaethon,” said he, “the king of the inhabitants of the sun—for it is inhabited, you know, as well as the moon—has been at war with us for a long time now. It began in this way.

“Once upon a time I gathered together the poorest people in my kingdom and undertook to plant a colony on the Morning Star, which was empty and uninhabited. Phaethon out of jealousy thwarted the colonisation, meeting us half-way at the head of his Ant Dragoons. At that time we were beaten, for we were not a match for them in strength, and we retreated: now, however, I desire to make war again and plant the colony. If you wish, then, you may take part with me in the expedition and I will give each of you one of my royal vultures and a complete outfit. We shall take the field to-morrow.”

“Very well,” said I, “since you think it best.”

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἄέρος (ᾱ, m) mist, air ~air  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἄρκτος** (f) bear  
**διανίστημι** awaken  
**δισμύριοι** (ὅ) 20,000  
**ἐλέφας** -ντος (m, 3) ivory, elephant  
**ἐστιάω** give a feast  
**ἔωθεν** at first light  
**θριδακίνη** lettuce  
**ἱππάζομαι** drive a chariot ~hippo  
**κεγχροβόλοι** -υ (m, 2) millet-throwers  
**λάσιος** shaggy, overgrown ~lanolin  
**λάχανον** garden herbs  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**μηχανοποιός** engineer  
**μυριάς** -δος (ὅ, f, 3) countless, myriad  
**ὅθεν** whence

**ὀκταχισμύριοι** (ὅ) 80,000  
**ὄρνειν** bird ~ornithology  
**πάντη** everywhere  
**πενταχισμύριοι** (ὅ) 50,000  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**προσέοικα** resemble  
**προσηγορία** greeting, name  
**πτερόν** feather, wing ~pterodactyl  
**πτερόω** give wings  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter  
**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
 target ~telescope  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**τρισμύριοι** (ὅ) 30,000  
**φύλλον** leaf  
**ψύλλα** spider, flea  
**ώκύπερος** swift-winged ~oxytocin

## 1.13

Τότε μὲν οὖν παρ' αὐτῷ ἐστιαθέντες ἐμείναμεν, ἔωθεν δὲ  
 διαναστάντες ἐτασσόμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ σκοποὶ ἐσήμαινον  
 πλησίον εἶναι τοὺς πολεμίους. τὸ μὲν οὖν πλῆθος τῆς  
 στρατιᾶς δέκα μυριάδες ἐγένοντο ἄνευ τῶν σκευοφόρων  
 καὶ τῶν μηχανοποιῶν καὶ τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῶν ξένων  
 συμμάχων· τούτων δὲ ὀκτακισμύριοι μὲν ἦσαν οἱ  
 Ἰππόγυποι, δισμύριοι δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τῶν Λαχανοπτέρων.  
 ὄρνεον δὲ καὶ τοῦτό ἐστι μέγιστον, ἀντὶ τῶν πτερῶν  
 λαχάνοις πάντῃ λάσιον, τὰ δὲ ὠκύπτερα ἔχει θριδακίνης  
 φύλλοις μάλιστα προσεοικότα. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις οἱ  
 Κεγχροβόλοι τετάχατο καὶ οἱ Σκοροδομάχοι. ἦλθον  
 δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἄρκτου σύμμαχοι, τρισμύριοι μὲν  
 Ψυλλοτοξόται, πεντακισμύριοι δὲ Ἀνεμοδρόμοι· τούτων  
 δὲ οἱ μὲν Ψυλλοτοξόται ἐπὶ ψυλλῶν μεγάλων ἱππάζονται,  
 ὅθεν καὶ τὴν προσηγορίαν ἔχουσιν· μέγεθος δὲ τῶν  
 ψυλλῶν ὅσον δώδεκα ἐλέφαντες· οἱ δὲ Ἀνεμοδρόμοι πεζοὶ  
 μὲν εἰσιν, φέρονται δὲ ἐν τῷ ἀέρι ἄνευ πτερῶν· ὁ δὲ τρόπος



1.13

Τότε μὲν οὖν παρ' αὐτῷ |give a feast ἐμείναμεν, |at first light  
|awaken ἔτασσόμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ |lookout |give orders to;  
|show; mark  
|near εἶναι τοὺς πολεμίους. τὸ μὲν οὖν πλῆθος τῆς  
στρατιᾶς δέκα |countless, ἐγένοντο |away from; |pack animal, porter  
|myriad |not having;  
καὶ τῶν |engineer καὶ τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῶν ξένων  
|not needing  
συμμάχων· τούτων δὲ |80,000 μὲν ἦσαν οἱ  
Ἴππόγυποι, |20,000 δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τῶν Λαχανοπτέρων.  
|bird δὲ καὶ τοῦτό ἐστι μέγιστον, ἀντὶ τῶν πτερῶν  
|garden |everywhere ἰον, τὰ δὲ |swift-winged ἔχει |lettuce  
|herbs  
|leaf μάλιστα |resemble ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις οἱ  
|millet-throwers τετάχατο καὶ οἱ Σκοροδομάχοι. ἦλθον  
δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς |bear σύμμαχοι, |30,000 μὲν  
Ψυλλοτοξόται, |50,000 δὲ Ἀνεμοδρόμοι· τούτων  
δὲ οἱ μὲν Ψυλλοτοξόται ἐπὶ |spider, flea· |γάλων |drive a chariot  
ὄθεν καὶ τὴν |greeting, name ἔχουσιν· |tall, big δὲ τῶν  
|spider, flea Ἴον δώδεκα |ivory, οἱ δὲ Ἀνεμοδρόμοι πεζοὶ  
|elephant  
μὲν εἰσιν, φέρονται δὲ ἐν τῷ ἀέρι |away from; |not hav- |γρόπος  
|ing; not needing

## 1.13

That night we stopped there as his guests, but at daybreak we arose and took our posts, for the scouts signalled that the enemy was near. The number of our army was a hundred thousand, apart from the porters, the engineers, the infantry and the foreign allies; of this total, eighty thousand were Vulture Dragoons and twenty thousand Grassplume-riders. The Grassplume is also a very large bird, which instead of plumage is all shaggy with grass and has wings very like lettuce-leaves. Next to these the Millet-shooters and the Garlic-fighters were posted. Endymion also had allies who came from the Great Bear—thirty thousand Flea-archers and fifty thousand Volplaneurs. The Flea-archers ride on great fleas, from which they get their name; the fleas are as large as twelve elephants. The Volplaneurs are infantry, to be sure, but they fly in the air without wings. As to the manner of their

*vocabulary*

ἄπιστος not trusting, not trustworthy  
 ~stand  
 ἄρρηκτος unbreakable  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 ἀστήρ -έρος (m) star  
 διόπερ therefore  
 ἐπτακισμύριοι (ὑ) 70,000  
 ἐστία hearth ~Hestia  
 θεάομαι look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
 θέρμινος of lupines  
 θέρμος lupine  
 θερμόω to heat  
 θέρμω to heat  
 θώραξ -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax  
 ἵππογέραντοι -υ (m, 2) crane-cavalry  
 ἱστίον sail ~stand  
 καθάπερ exactly as  
 καρτερός strong, staunch  
 κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
 κολπόω swell, fold

κράνος -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram  
 κύαμος bean  
 λέπος -εος (n, 3) rind, husk  
 ξίφος -εος (n, 3) sword  
 πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
 πεντακισχίλιοι 5,000  
 ποδῆρης foot-length  
 ποιόω make of a certain quality  
 σκάφη trough, tray  
 σκάφος (τό) hull, ship; (ό) digging  
 σκευή equipment  
 συρράπτω stitch together  
 τεράστιος monstrous, prodigious  
 τοιόσδε such  
 ὑποζώννυμι (υῦ) undergird  
 φολιδωτός scaly  
 φορά carrying, burden  
 φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)  
 ~physics  
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
 χιτών -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor

τῆς φορᾶς τοιόσδε. χιτῶνας ποδήρεις ὑπέζωσμένοι  
 κολπώσαντες αὐτοὺς τῷ ἀνέμῳ καθάπερ ἰστία φέρονται  
 ὥσπερ τὰ σκάφη. τὰ πολλὰ δ' οἱ τοιοῦτοι ἐν ταῖς  
 μάχαις πελτασταί εἰσιν. ἐλέγοντο δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ὑπὲρ  
 τὴν Καππαδοκίαν ἀστέρων ἥξειν Στρουθοβάλανοι μὲν  
 ἑπτακισμῦριοι, Ἴππογέρανοι δὲ πεντακισχίλιοι. τούτους  
 ἐγὼ οὐκ ἐθεασάμην· οὐ γὰρ ἀφίκοντο. διόπερ οὐδὲ γράψαι  
 τὰς φύσεις αὐτῶν ἐτόλμησα· τεράστια γὰρ καὶ ἄπιστα  
 περὶ αὐτῶν ἐλέγετο.

#### 1.14-15

Αὕτη μὲν ἡ τοῦ Ἐνδυμίωνος δύναμις ἦν. σκευὴ  
 δὲ πάντων ἡ αὐτή· κράνη μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν κυάμων,  
 μεγάλοι γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῖς οἱ κύαμοι καὶ καρτεροί·  
 θώρακες δὲ φολιδωτοὶ πάντες θέρμιοι· τὰ γὰρ λέπη  
 τῶν θέρμων συρράπτοντες ποιοῦνται θώρακας,  
 ἄρρηκτον δὲ ἐκεῖ γίνεται τοῦ θέρμου τὸ λέπος  
 ὥσπερ κέρας· ἀσπίδες δὲ καὶ ξίφη οἶα τὰ Ἑλληνικά.

τῆς |carrying, |such |tunic |foot-length |undergird  
|burden  
|swell, fold αὐτοὺς τῷ ἀνέμῳ |exactly as ἰστία φέρονται  
ὥσπερ τὰ σκάφη. τὰ πολλὰ δ' οἱ τοιοῦτοι ἐν ταῖς  
μάχαις |light troops εἰσιν. ἐλέγοντο δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ὑπὲρ  
τὴν Καππαδοκίαν |star ἥξειν Στρουθοβάλανοι μὲν  
|70,000 , |crane-cavalry δὲ |5,000 . τούτους  
ἐγὼ οὐκ ἐθεασάμην· οὐ γὰρ ἀφίκοντο. |therefore ἵδὲ γράψαι  
τὰς φύσεις αὐτῶν ἐτόλμησα· |monstrous, γὰρ καὶ |not trusting, not  
|prodigious |trustworthy  
περὶ αὐτῶν ἐλέγετο.

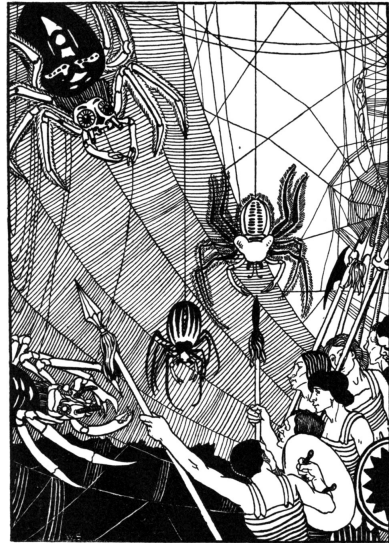
# 1.14-15

Αὕτη μὲν ἡ τοῦ Ἐνδυμίωνος δύναμις ἦν. |equipment  
δὲ πάντων ἡ αὐτή· |helmet; ship's ram τῶν |bean ,  
μεγάλοι γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῖς οἱ |bean καὶ |strong,  
|breastplate δὲ |scaly πάντες |of lupines τὰ γὰρ |rind, husk  
τῶν θέρμων |stitch together |make of a cer-|breastplate,  
|unbreakable δὲ ἐκεῖ γίνεται τοῦ θέρμου τὸ |rind, husk  
ὥσπερ κέρας· ἀσπίδες δὲ καὶ |sword ἴα τὰ Ἑλληνικά.

flight, they pull their long tunics up through their girdles, let the baggy folds fill with wind as if they were sails, and are carried along like boats. For the most part they serve as light infantry in battle. It was said, too, that the stars over Cappadocia would send seventy thousand Sparrowcorns and five thousand Crane Dragoons. I did not get a look at them, as they did not come, so I have not ventured to write about their characteristics, for the stories about them were wonderful and incredible.

#### 1.14-15

These were the forces of Endymion. They all had the same equipment—helmets of beans (their beans are large and tough); scale-corselets of lupines (they sew together the skins of lupines to make the corselets, and in that country the skin of the lupine is unbreakable, like horn); shields and swords of



ἀράχλαι παρ' αὐτοῖς πολλοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι γίνονται, πολὺ τῶν Κυκλάδων νήσων ἕκαστος μείζων. (p. 56)

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἄέρος (ᾱ, m) mist, air ~air  
**ἀράχνη** spider's web  
**δίπλεθος** 60 meters long  
**διυφαίνω** fill up by weaving,  
 interweave  
**ἑξακισχίλιοι** 6000  
**ἑξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia

**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**μεταξύ** between  
**μυριάς** -δος (ῶ, f, 3) countless, myriad  
**μύρμηξ** ant  
**παρατάσσω** place beside  
**προσείκα** resemble  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**σελήνη** moon  
**ὕπόπτερος** winged

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ καιρὸς ἦν, ἐτάξαντο ὧδε· τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν κέρασ  
 εἶχον οἱ Ἴππόγυποι καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς ἀρίστους περὶ  
 αὐτὸν ἔχων· καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐν τούτοις ἦμεν· τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον  
 οἱ Λαχανόπτεροι· τὸ μέσον δὲ οἱ σύμμαχοι ὡς ἐκάστοις  
 ἐδόκει. τὸ δὲ πεζὸν ἦσαν μὲν ἀμφὶ τὰς ἑξακισχιλίας  
 μυριάδας, ἐτάχθησαν δὲ οὕτως. ἀράχναι παρ' αὐτοῖς  
 πολλοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι γίνονται, πολὺ τῶν Κυκλάδων  
 νήσων ἕκαστος μείζων. τούτοις προσέταξεν διωφῆναι  
 τὸν μεταξὺ τῆς Σελήνης καὶ τοῦ Ἑωσφόρου ἀέρα.  
 ὥς δὲ τάχιστα ἐξεργάσαντο καὶ πεδίον ἐποίησαν, ἐπὶ  
 τούτου παρέταξε τὸ πεζόν· ἡγείτο δὲ αὐτῶν Νυκτερίων  
 ὁ Εὐδιάνακτος τρίτος αὐτός.

## 1.16

Τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον εἶχον οἱ Ἴππομύρμηκες  
 καὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς ὁ Φαέθων· θηρία δέ ἐστι μέγιστα, ὑπόπτερα,  
 τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν μύρμηξι προσεοικότα πλὴν τοῦ μεγέθους·  
 ὁ γὰρ μέγιστος αὐτῶν καὶ δίπλεθρος ἦν. ἐμάχοντο δὲ οὐ  
 μόνον οἱ ἐπ' αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτοὶ μάλιστα τοῖς



Ἐπειδὴ δὲ καιρὸς ἦν, ἐτάξαντο ὧδε· τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν <sup>|horn;  
military  
unit</sup>  
εἶχον οἱ Ἱππόγυπτοι καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς ἀρίστους <sup>|honored; left-hand</sup>  
αὐτὸν ἔχων· καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐν τούτοις ἦμεν· τὸ δὲ <sup>|countless, ,</sup>  
οἱ Λαχανόπτεροι· τὸ μέσον δὲ οἱ σύμμαχοι ὡς ἐκάστοις <sup>|spider's web ...ρ' αὐτοῖς  
|myriad</sup>  
ἐδόκει. τὸ δὲ πεζὸν ἦσαν μὲν ἀμφὶ τὰς <sup>|post at, attach|fill up by weaving, in-  
to, command |terweave</sup>  
πολλοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι γίνονται, πολὺ τῶν Κυκλάδων  
νήσων ἕκαστος μεῖζων. τούτοις <sup>|between τῆς |moon</sup>  
τὸν <sup>|mist, air</sup>  
ὡς δὲ τάχιστα <sup>|accomplish; undo ...ὶ πεδίον ἐποίησαν, ἐπὶ</sup>  
τούτου <sup>|place  
|beside</sup> τὸ πεζόν· ἡγεῖτο δὲ αὐτῶν Νυκτερίων  
ὁ Εὐδιάνακτος τρίτος αὐτός.

## 1.16

Τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν <sup>|honored; left-hand</sup> Ἱππομύρμηκες  
καὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς ὁ Φαέθων· θηρία δέ ἐστι μέγιστα, <sup>|winged</sup>  
τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν <sup>|ant</sup> <sup>|resemble</sup> πλὴν τοῦ <sup>|tall, big</sup>  
ὁ γὰρ μέγιστος αὐτῶν καὶ <sup>|60 meters ἦν. ἐμάχοντο δὲ οὐ  
|long</sup>  
μόνον οἱ ἐπ' αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτοὶ μάλιστα τοῖς

the Greek pattern.

When the time came, they took position thus; on the right wing, the Vulture Dragoons and the king, with the bravest about him (we were among them); on the left, the Grassplumes; in the centre, the allies, in whatever formation they liked. The infantry came to about sixty million, and was deployed as follows. Spiders in that country are numerous and large, all of them far larger than the Cyclades islands. They were commissioned by the king to span the air between the Moon and the Morning Star with a web, and as soon as they had finished and had made a plain, he deployed his infantry on it. Their leaders were Owlett son of Fairweather, and two others.

#### 1.16

As to the enemy, on the left were the Ant Dragoons, with whom was Phaethon. They are very large beasts with wings, like the ants that we have, except in size: the largest one was two hundred feet long. They themselves fought, as well as their riders, and made especially good use of their

*vocabulary*

**ἀγχέμαχος** hand-to-hand  
**ἀντέχω** hold up as protection against  
 ~ischemia  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**βάλανος** (f) nut; pin, bolt  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**δυσωδία** foul smell  
**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus  
**ἐποχέομαι** carry, bear upon  
**καύλινος** of a stalk  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**κυνοπρόσωπος** dog-faced  
**κώνωψ** -πος (m) mosquito  
**μαλάχη** mallow  
**μάχιμος** warlike  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
 ~pomp

**μυκήτινος** of mushrooms  
**μυριάς** -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad  
**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ῖ, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**πεντακισχίλιοι** 5,000  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πρόσωθεν** forward, in the future; far  
**πτέρω** give wings  
**πτρωτός** winged  
**ράφανίς** -δος (ῖ, f) radish  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**τραῦμα** -τος (n, 3) injury  
**ὑπερμεγέθης** very difficult  
**ὑστερίζω** be late  
**χρίω** (ῖ) anoint ~Christ  
**φιλός** (ῖ) naked, bare ~epsilon

κέρασιν· ἐλέγοντο δὲ οὗτοι εἶναι ἀμφὶ τὰς πέντε μυριάδας.  
 ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ αὐτῶν ἐτάχθησαν οἱ Ἀεροκώνωπες,  
 ὄντες καὶ οὗτοι ἀμφὶ τὰς πέντε μυριάδας, πάντες  
 τοξόται κώνωψι μεγάλοις ἐποχούμενοι· μετὰ δὲ τούτους  
 οἱ Ἀεροκόρδακες, ψιλοί τε ὄντες καὶ πεζοί, πλὴν μάχιμοί  
 γε καὶ οὗτοι· πόρρωθεν γὰρ ἐσφενδόνων ῥαφανίδας  
 ὑπερμεγέθεις, καὶ ὁ βληθεὶς οὐδὲ ὀλίγον ἀντέχειν  
 ἐδύνατο, ἀπέθνησκε δὲ δυσωδίας τινὸς τῷ τραύματι  
 ἐγγινομένης· ἐλέγοντο δὲ χρίειν τὰ βέλη μαλάχης ἰῶ.  
 ἐχόμενοι δὲ αὐτῶν ἐτάχθησαν οἱ Καυλομύκητες, ὅπλῃται  
 ὄντες καὶ ἀγχέμαχοι, τὸ πλῆθος μύριοι· ἐκλήθησαν  
 δὲ Καυλομύκητες, ὅτι ἀσπίσι μὲν μυκητίναις ἐχρῶντο,  
 δόρασι δὲ καυλίνοις τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν ἀσπαράγων. πλησίον  
 δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ Κυνοβάλανοι ἔστησαν, οὓς ἔπεμψαν αὐτῷ  
 οἱ τὸν Σείριον κατοικοῦντες, πεντακισχίλιοι καὶ οὗτοι  
 ἄνδρες κυνοπρόσωποι ἐπὶ βαλάνων πτερωτῶν μαχόμενοι.  
 ἐλέγοντο δὲ κακείνῳ ὑστερίζειν τῶν συμμάχων οὓς τε ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ Γαλαξίου μετεπέμπετο σφενδονήτας καὶ οἱ

|horn;      ἐλέγοντο δὲ οὗτοι εἶναι ἀμφὶ τὰς πέντε |countless, ,  
 |military      |myriad  
 |unit ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ αὐτῶν ἐτάχθησαν οἱ Ἀεροκώνωπες,  
 ὄντες καὶ οὗτοι ἀμφὶ τὰς πέντε |countless, , πάντες  
 |myriad  
 |archer |mosquito μεγάλοις |carry, bear upon, ἐτὰ δὲ τούτους  
 οἱ Ἀεροκόρδακες, |naked, bare ἔτες καὶ πεζοί, πλὴν |warlike  
 γε καὶ οὗτοι· |forward, in the fu-|sling |radish  
 |ture; far  
 |very difficult , καὶ ὁ βληθεὶς οὐδὲ ὀλίγον |hold up as protection  
 |against  
 ἐδύνατο, ἀπέθνησκε δὲ |foul smell τινὸς τῷ |injury  
 |live in ἐλέγοντο δὲ |anooint τὰ |missile|mallow ἰῶ.  
 ἐχόμενοι δὲ αὐτῶν ἐτάχθησαν οἱ Καυλομύκητες, |hoplite, heavy in-  
 |fantryman  
 ὄντες καὶ |hand-to-hand τὸ πλῆθος μύριοι· ἐκλήθησαν  
 δὲ Καυλομύκητες, ὅτι ἀσπίσι μὲν |of mushrooms ᾤρωντο,  
 δόρασι δὲ |of a stalk τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν ἀσπαράγων. |near  
 δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ Κυνοβάλανοι ἔστησαν, οὓς ἔπεμψαν αὐτῷ  
 οἱ τὸν Σείριον κατοικοῦντες, |5,000 καὶ οὗτοι  
 ἄνδρες |dog-faced ἐπὶ |nut; pin, bolt ἐρωτῶν μαχόμενοι.  
 ἐλέγοντο δὲ κἀκείνῳ |be late τῶν συμμάχων οὓς τε ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ Γαλαξίου |send; (mid)|slinger καὶ οἱ  
 |summon

feelers. They were said to number about fifty thousand. On their right were posted the Sky-mosquitoes, numbering also about fifty thousand, all archers riding on large mosquitoes. Next to them were the Sky-dancers, a sort of light infantry, formidable however, like all the rest, for they slung radishes at long range, and any man that they hit could not hold out a moment, but died, and his wound was malodorous. They were said to anoint their missiles with mallow poison. Beside them were posted the Stalk-mushrooms, heavy infantry employed at close quarters, ten thousand in number. They had the name Stalk-mushrooms because they used mushrooms for shields and stalks of asparagus for spears. Near them stood the Puppycorns, who were sent him by the inhabitants of the Dog-star, five thousand dog-faced men who fight on the back of winged acorns. It was said that there were tardy allies in Phaethon's case, too—the slingers whom he had summoned from the Milky Way, and



τῆς δὲ τροπῆς λαμπρᾶς γεγενημένης πολλοὶ μὲν ζῶντες ἡλίσκοντο, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἀνηροῦντο, καὶ τὸ αἷμα ἔρρει πολὺ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν νεφῶν (p. 64)

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀραρίσκω** join, fit, furnish ~arthritis  
**ἄχρι** as far as (+gen); until  
**βάπτω** submerge ~baptize  
**διόπερ** therefore  
**ἐγκλίνω** (ι) rest on ~incline  
**ἐκάτερος** each of two  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπεξέρχομαι** sally  
**ἐπιβοηθέω** come to aid  
**ἔρρω** go (neg. connotation) ~serve  
**ἐρυθρός** red  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp  
**μῆποτε** absolutely never  
**νέφος** -εος (n, 3) cloud ~nebula

**ὀγκάομαι** bray  
**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager  
**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy  
**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
 ~genus  
**παρασκευή** preparation  
**πυρπολέω** tend a fire ~pole  
**ῥέζω** do, make, perform sacrifices  
 ~ergonomics  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f) trumpet  
**σαλπίζω** sound the trumpet  
**σημεῖον** sign  
**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger  
**τροπή** rout, turning of an enemy  
 ~trophy  
**φασέθω** shine, be radiant

νεφελοκένταυροι. ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνοι μὲν τῆς μάχης ἤδη  
κεκριμένης ἀφίκοντο, ὥς μήποτε ὄφελον· οἱ σφενδονῆται  
δὲ οὐδὲ ὅλως παρεγένοντο, διόπερ φασὶν ὕστερον αὐτοῖς  
ὀργισθέντα τὸν φαέθοντα πυρπολῆσαι τὴν χώραν.

## 1.17

Τοιαύτη μὲν καὶ ὁ φαέθων ἐπήει παρασκευῇ. συμμίζαντες  
δὲ ἐπειδὴ τὰ σημεῖα ἦρθη καὶ ὠγκήσαντο ἐκατέρων οἱ  
ὄνοι τούτοις γὰρ ἀντὶ σαλπιστῶν χρῶνται ἐμάχοντο. καὶ  
τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἡλιωτῶν αὐτίκα ἔφυγε οὐδ' εἰς  
χείρας δεξάμενον τοὺς Ἴππογύπους, καὶ ἡμεῖς εἰπόμεθα  
κτείνοντες· τὸ δεξιὸν δὲ αὐτῶν ἐκράτει τοῦ ἐπὶ τῷ  
ἡμετέρῳ εὐωνύμου, καὶ ἐπεξῆλθον οἱ Ἀεροκώνωπες  
διώκοντες ἄχρι πρὸς τοὺς πεζούς. ἐνταῦθα δὲ κακείνων  
ἐπιβοηθούντων ἔφυγον ἐγκλίναντες, καὶ μάλιστα ἐπεὶ  
ἦσθοντο τοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ σφῶν νενικημένους. τῆς  
δὲ τροπῆς λαμπρᾶς γεγενημένης πολλοὶ μὲν ζῶντες  
ἠλίσκοντο, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἀνηροῦντο, καὶ τὸ αἷμα ἔρρει  
πολὺ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν νεφῶν, ὥστε αὐτὰ βάπτεσθαι καὶ ἐρυθρὰ



νεφελοκένταυροι. ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνοι μὲν τῆς μάχης ἤδη  
 κεκριμένης ἀφίκοντο, ὥς |absolutely\_φελον· οἱ |slinger  
 |never  
 δὲ οὐδὲ ὄλως |be beside, attend|therefore, ἄσιν ὕστερον αὐτοῖς  
 |anger, pro- τὸν |shine, be ra-|tend a fire τὴν χώραν.  
 |voke, annoy |diant

# 1.17

Τοιαύτη μὲν καὶ ὁ |shine, bellie |preparation συμμίζαντες  
 |radiant |upon;  
 δὲ ἐπειδὴ τὰ |sign |join, ap- |at fun-|bray |each of two ρί  
 |nish |proach  
 |donkey. ὑτοῖς γὰρ ἀντὶ σαλπιστῶν χρῶνται ἐμάχοντο. καὶ  
 τὸ μὲν |honored; left-hānd τῶν αὐτίκα ἔφυγε οὐδ' εἰς  
 χεῖρας δεξιόμενον τοὺς Ἱππογύπους, καὶ ἡμεῖς εἰπόμεθα  
 κτείνοντες· τὸ δεξιὸν δὲ αὐτῶν ἐκράτει τοῦ ἐπὶ τῷ  
 ἡμετέρῳ |honored; left-hānd |sally οἱ Ἀεροκώνωπες  
 διώκοντες |as far\_ as· οὐς πεζούς. |there, here\_εὐ κακείνων  
 |(+gen); until  
 |come to aid ἔφυγον |rest on , καὶ μάλιστα ἐπεὶ  
 ἦσθοντο τοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ |honored; left-hānd . ἐνικημένους. τῆς  
 δὲ |rout, |brilliant γεγεννημένης πολλοὶ μὲν ζῶντες  
 |turning  
 |be captured , πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ |take up , καὶ τὸ αἶμα ἔρρει  
 πολὺ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν |cloud , ὥστε αὐτὰ |submerge καὶ |red

the Cloud-centaurs. The latter to be sure, arrived just after the battle was over (if only they had not!); but the slingers did not put in an appearance at all. On account of this, they say, Phaethon was furious with them and afterwards ravaged their country with fire.

#### 1.17

This, then, was the array with which Phaethon came on. Joining battle when the flags had been flown and the donkeys on both sides had brayed (for they had donkeys for trumpeters), they fought. The left wing of the Sunites fled at once, without even receiving the charge of the Vulture Horse, and we pursued, cutting them down. But their right wing got the better of the left on our side, and the Sky-mosquitoes advanced in pursuit right up to the infantry. Then, when the infantry came to the rescue, they broke and fled, especially as they saw that the forces on their left had been defeated. It was a glorious victory, in which many were taken alive and many were slain; so much blood flowed on the clouds that they were dyed and looked red,

*vocabulary*

**ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

**ἀερομαχία** aerial battle

**ἀναγράφω** publish, record

**ἀναστρέφω** act; overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy

**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea

**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy ~stand

**ἀράχνιον** spiderweb

**ἄρτι** at the same time

**δίωξις** -εως (f) pursuit

**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture

**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere

**θέαμα** -τος (ἄα, n, 3) sight, spectacle

**καταστάζω** shed, drip

**κολοσσός** statue, big statue

**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person) ~megaton

**νέφος** -εος (n, 3) cloud ~nebula

**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo

**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas

**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas

**παράδοξος** incredible

**πεζομαχία** land fighting

**προσδοκάω** expect

**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion

**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic

**προσίημι** be allowed near

**πτερόω** give wings

**πτερωτός** winged

**σκοπάω** watch, observe

**σκοπέω** behold, consider

**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope

**σύγκειμαι** be composed of, agreed on

**τρόπαιον** victory monument

**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

**ὕω** (ῶ) to rain

**φορτίς** -δος (f) cargo ship ~bear

φαίνεσθαι, οἷα παρ' ἡμῖν δυομένου τοῦ ἡλίου φαίνεται, πολὺ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν γῆν κατέσταζεν, ὥστε με εἰκάζειν μὴ ἄρα τοιούτου τινὸς καὶ πάλαι ἄνω γενομένου Ὅμηρος ὑπέλαβεν αἵματι ὕσαι τὸν Δία ἐπὶ τῷ τοῦ Σαρπηδόνος θανάτῳ.

### 1.18-20

Ἀναστρέψαντες δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς διώξεως δύο τρόπαια ἐστήσαμεν, τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀραχνίων τῆς πεζομαχίας, τὸ δὲ τῆς ἀερομαχίας ἐπὶ τῶν νεφῶν.

Ἄρτι δὲ τούτων γινομένων ἡγγέλλοντο ὑπὸ τῶν σκοπῶν οἱ νεφελοκένταυροι προσελαύνοντες, οὓς ἔδει πρὸ τῆς μάχης ἐλθεῖν τῷ Φαέθοντι. καὶ δὴ ἐφαίνοντο προσιόντες, θέαμα παραδοξότατον, ἐξ ἵππων πτερωτῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων συγκείμενοι· μέγεθος δὲ τῶν μὲν ἀνθρώπων ὅσον τοῦ ῥοδίων κολοσσοῦ ἐξ ἡμισείας ἐς τὸ ἄνω, τῶν δὲ ἵππων ὅσον νεὼς μεγάλης φορτίδος. τὸ μέντοι πλήθος αὐτῶν οὐκ ἀνέγραψα, μή τῳ καὶ ἄπιστον δόξῃ τοσοῦτον

φαίνεσθαι, οἷα παρ' ἡμῖν δυομένου τοῦ ἡλίου φαίνεται,  
πολὺν δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν γῆν |shed, drip , ὥστε με |liken;  
|conjecture  
μὴ ἄρα τοιούτου τινὸς καὶ πάλαι ἄνω γενομένου Ὅμηρος  
|take under one's sup-|to rain ὃν Δία ἐπὶ τῷ τοῦ Σαρπηδόνο  
|port, seize; speak up;  
|imagine  
|συνάτω.

1.18-20

|act: overturn; mid: δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς |pursuit δύο |victory  
|find oneself in |monument  
ἐστήσαμεν, τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν |spiderweb τῆς πεζομαχίας, τὸ  
δὲ τῆς |aerial battle ἐπὶ τῶν |cloud  
|at the same time... γινομένων |carry a message, τὸ τῶν σκοπῶν  
|announce  
οἱ νεφελοκένταυροι |go to, approach , οὓς ἔδει πρὸ τῆς  
μάχης ἐλθεῖν τῷ Φαέθοντι. καὶ δὴ ἐφαίνοντο προσιόντες,  
|sight, |incredible , ἐξ ἵππων περωτῶν καὶ  
|spectacle  
ἀνθρώπων |be composed of, |tall, big δὲ τῶν μὲν ἀνθρώπων  
|agreed on  
ὅσον τοῦ ροδίων |statue, big statue, ισείας ἐς τὸ ἄνω, τῶν δὲ  
ἵππων ὅσον νεὼς μεγάλης |cargo ship . τὸ μέντοι πλήθος  
αὐτῶν οὐκ |publish, , μὴ τῷ καὶ |not trusting, ἢ οὐ γοσοῦτον  
|record |trustworthy

as they do in our country when the sun is setting, and so much also dripped down on the earth that I wonder whether something of the sort did not take place in the sky long ago, when Homer supposed that Zeus had sent a rain of blood on account of the death of Sarpedon.

#### 1.18-20

When we had returned from the pursuit we set up two trophies, one on the spider-webs for the infantry battle and the other, for the sky battle, on the clouds.

We were just doing this when the scouts reported that the Cloud-centaurs, who should have come to Phaethon's aid before the battle, were advancing on us. Before we knew it, they were coming on in plain sight, a most unparalleled spectacle, being a combination of winged horses and men. In size the men were as large as the Colossus of Rhodes from the waist up, and the horses were as large as a great merchantman. Their number, however, I leave unrecorded for fear that someone may think it incredible, it was so great. Their

*vocabulary*

ἀγγελία message, news ~angel  
 ἀήρ ἀέρος (ἄ, m) mist, air ~air  
 ἀνασπάω draw again ~spatula  
 ἀναστρέφω act: overturn; mid: find  
 oneself in ~atrophy  
 ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue  
 ἀπόκομμα -τος (n, 3) splinter, chip  
 ἀποτειχίζω wall off  
 ἀράχνη spider's web  
 ἀράχνιον spiderweb  
 ἄτακτος disorderly  
 αὐγή light  
 αὐθήμερος on the same day  
 διάκειμαι be in a condition  
 διακέομαι repair  
 διασχεδάννυμι (ῥ) scatter, disperse  
 διατάσσω arrange, array  
 διπλός double, overlapping  
 δίωξις -εως (f) pursuit  
 ἔκλειψις -δος (f) abandonment; eclipse  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion

ἐπιπίπτω fall upon, attack  
 ζωγρέω capture, give quarter; revive  
 ~zoo  
 ζωδιακός the zodiac  
 καταδιώκω chase hard  
 κατατρέχω overrun; trash talk  
 λάφυρα -ου (ῥ, n, 2) spoils  
 μεταξύ between  
 μηκέτι no more  
 νεφελωτός made of clouds  
 ὀπίσω backwards, later in time, after  
 (+gen)  
 ὄρνειν bird ~ornithology  
 σαφής clear, understandable  
 σελήνη moon  
 σεληνίτης -ου (m, 1) moon-stone;  
 moon person  
 ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea  
 τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
 τρόπαιον victory monument  
 φάεθω shine, be radiant

ἦν. ἡγείτο δὲ αὐτῶν ὁ ἐκ τοῦ ζωδιακοῦ τοξότης.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθοντο τοὺς φίλους νενικημένους, ἐπὶ μὲν τὸν φαέθοντα ἔπεμπον ἀγγελίαν αὐθις ἐπιέναι, αὐτοὶ δὲ διαταξάμενοι τεταραγμένοις ἐπιπίπτουσι τοῖς σεληνίταις, ἀτάκτως περὶ τὴν δίωξιν καὶ τὰ λάφυρα διεσκεδασμένοις· καὶ πάντας μὲν τρέπουσιν, αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν βασιλέα καταδιώκουσι πρὸς τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὰ πλείστα τῶν ὀρνέων αὐτοῦ κτείνουσιν· ἀνέσπασαν δὲ καὶ τὰ τρόπαια καὶ κατέδραμον ἅπαν τὸ ὑπὸ τῶν ἀραχνῶν πεδῖον ὑφασμένον, ἐμὲ δὲ καὶ δύο τινὰς τῶν ἐταίρων ἐζώγρησαν. ἤδη δὲ παρῆν καὶ ὁ φαέθων καὶ αὐθις ἄλλα τρόπαια ὑπ' ἐκείνων ἵστατο.

Ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν ἀπηγόμεθα ἐς τὸν ἥλιον αὐθημερὸν τὰ χεῖρε ὀπίσω δεθέντες ἀραχνίου ἀποκόμματι. οἱ δὲ πολιορκεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἔγνωσαν τὴν πόλιν, ἀναστρέψαντες δὲ τὸ μεταξὺ τοῦ ἀέρος ἀπετείχιζον, ὥστε μηκέτι τὰς αὐγὰς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου πρὸς τὴν σελήνην διήκειν. τὸ δὲ τεῖχος ἦν διπλοῦν, νεφελωτόν· ὥστε σαφὴς ἔκλειψις τῆς σελήνης ἐγεγόνει



ἦν. ἡγείτο δὲ αὐτῶν ὁ ἐκ τοῦ |the zodiac |archer

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθοντο τοὺς φίλους νενικημένους, ἐπὶ μὲν

τὸν |shine, be radiant...πον |message, news... ἐπιέναι, αὐτοὶ δὲ

|arrange, array |mess things up |fall upon, attack... |moon-stone;,  
|moon person

|disorderly περὶ τὴν |pursuit καὶ τὰ |spoils |scatter, disperse

καὶ πάντας μὲν τρέπουσιν, αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν βασιλέα

|chase hard πρὸς τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὰ πλείστα τῶν ὀρνέων

αὐτοῦ κτείνουσιν· |draw again δὲ καὶ τὰ |victory καὶ  
|monument

|overrun; trash ἔβαν τὸ ὑπὸ τῶν |spider's web... δῖον ὑφασμένον,  
|talk

ἐμὲ δὲ καὶ δύο τινὰς τῶν ἐταίρων |capture ἤδη δὲ

παρῆν καὶ ὁ |shine, be radiant... ἄλλα |victory... π' ἐκείνων  
|monument

ἴστατο.

Ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν |lead away, back... τὸν ἥλιον αὐθημερὸν τῷ χεῖρε

ὀπίσω δεθέντες |spiderweb |splinter, chip... οἱ δὲ πολιορκεῖν

μὲν οὐκ ἔγνωσαν τὴν πόλιν, |act: overturn; mid: τὸ μεταξὺ  
|find oneself in

τοῦ ἀέρος |wall off... ὥστε μηκέτι τὰς |light ἀπὸ τοῦ

ἡλίου πρὸς τὴν |moon διήκειν. τὸ δὲ τεῖχος ἦν διπλοῦν,

|made of clouds... τε σαφὲς |abandonment; |moon ἐγεγόνει  
|eclipse

leader was the Archer from the Zodiac.

When they saw that their friends had been defeated, they sent word to Phaethon to advance again, and then, on their own account, in regular formation fell on the disordered Moonites, who had broken ranks and scattered to pursue and to plunder. They put them all to flight, pursued the king himself to the city and killed most of his birds; they plucked up the trophies and overran the whole plain woven by the spiders, and they captured me with two of my comrades. By this time Phaethon too was present, and other trophies were being set up by their side.

As for us, we were taken off to the sun that day, our hands tied behind our backs with a section of spider-web. The enemy decided not to lay siege to the city, but on their way back they built a wall through the air, so that the rays of the sun should no longer reach the moon. The wall was double, made of cloud, so that a genuine eclipse of the moon took place, and

*vocabulary*

αἰχμάλωτος captive ~acute  
 ἀμφορεύς -ος (m) amphora  
 ἀστήρ -έρος (m) star  
 αὐτόνομος autonomous  
 βιοτεύω live, live on  
 διατείχισμα -τος (n, 3) walled place  
 διηνεκῆς at length, in detail  
 δῖς twice  
 δρόσος (f) dew, pure water  
 εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear  
 ἱκετεύω approach to beg  
 καθαιρέω take down, close ~heresy  
 καταλύω unyoke; destroy ~loose  
 μεταγινώσκω change one's mind  
 ~gnostic  
 μηκέτι no more  
 οἰκοδόμημα -τος (n, 3) building  
 ὄμηρος insurance, hostage

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 ὀργή urge, impulse; anger  
 παραλύω detach, disable  
 περιοράω look around; watch; permit  
 πιέζω press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
 προτεραῖος previous to  
 σελήνη moon  
 σκότος darkness, shadow ~shadow  
 συμμαχέω be an ally  
 συνθήκη combination; agreement  
 συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis  
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
 ὑποτελέω pay a tax  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
 ~bear  
 φόρον forum  
 φόρος tribute, revenue

καὶ νυκτὶ διηνεκεῖ πᾶσα κατεΐχετο.

Πιεζόμενος δὲ τούτοις ὁ Ἐνδυμίων πέμψας ἰκέτευε καθαιρεῖν τὸ οἰκοδόμημα καὶ μὴ σφᾶς περιορᾶν ἐν σκότῳ βιοτεύοντας, ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ καὶ φόρους τελέσειν καὶ σύμμαχος ἔσεσθαι καὶ μηκέτι πολεμήσειν, καὶ ὁμήρους ἐπὶ τούτοις δοῦναι ἤθελεν. οἱ δὲ περὶ τὸν Φαέθοντα γενομένης δις ἐκκλησίας, τῇ προτεραίᾳ μὲν οὐδὲν παρέλυσαν τῆς ὀργῆς, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ μετέγνωσαν, καὶ ἐγένετο ἡ εἰρήνη ἐπὶ τούτοις·

Κατὰ τὰδε συνθήκας ἐποιήσαντο Ἡλιῶται καὶ οἱ σύμμαχοι πρὸς Σεληνίτας καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, ἐπὶ τῷ καταλῦσαι μὲν Ἡλιώτας τὸ διατείχισμα καὶ μηκέτι ἐς τὴν σελήνην ἐσβάλλειν, ἀποδοῦναι δὲ καὶ τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ῥητοῦ ἕκαστον χρήματος, τοὺς δὲ Σεληνίτας ἀφεῖναι μὲν αὐτονόμους τοὺς γε ἄλλους ἀστέρας, ὅπλα δὲ μὴ ἐπιφέρειν τοῖς Ἡλιώταις, συμμαχεῖν δὲ τῇ ἀλλήλων, ἣν τις ἐπὶ· φόρον δὲ ὑποτελεῖν ἐκάστου ἔτους τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Σεληνιτῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Ἡλιωτῶν δρόσου ἀμφορέας

καὶ νυκτὶ |at length, in detail |...τείχετο.

|press, squeeze δὲ τούτοις ὁ Ἐνδυμίων πέμψας |approach to beg

|take down,|building καὶ μὴ σφᾶς |look around;|darkness  
|close |watch; permit

|live, live on , |promise, δὲ καὶ |tribute, τελέσειν καὶ  
|agree |revenue

σύμμαχος ἔσσεσθαι καὶ |no more |ολεμήσειν, καὶ |insurance, 'πὶ  
|hostage

τούτοις δοῦναι ἤθελεν. οἱ δὲ περὶ τὸν Φαέθοντα γενομένης

|twice|...κκλησίας, τῇ |previous to μὲν οὐδὲν |detach, τῆς  
|disable

ὀργῆς, τῇ |the next; later|...change one's mind|...ἐγένετο ἡ εἰρήνη

ἐπὶ τούτοις·

Κατὰ τάδε συνθήκας ἐποιήσαντο Ἡλιῶται καὶ οἱ

σύμμαχοι πρὸς Σεληνίτας καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, ἐπὶ τῷ

|unyoke; μὲν Ἡλιώτας τὸ |walled place καὶ |no more |...τὴν  
|destroy

|moon ἐσβάλλειν, ἀποδοῦναι δὲ καὶ τοὺς |captive

ρήτοῦ ἕκαστον χρήματος, τοὺς δὲ Σεληνίτας ἀφεῖναι

μὲν |autonomous τοὺς γε ἄλλους |star , ὅπλα δὲ μὴ

|bestow, τοῖς Ἡλιώταις, |be an ally δὲ τῇ ἀλλήλων, ἣν τις  
|impute

ἐπὶ· φόρον δὲ |pay a tax ἑκάστου ἔτους τὸν βασιλέα τῶν

Σεληνιτῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Ἡλιωτῶν |dew, |amphora  
|pure  
|water

she was completely enshrouded in unbroken night.

Hard pressed by this, Endymion sent and begged them to pull down the construction and not let them lead their lives in darkness. He promised to pay tribute, to be an ally and not to make war again, and volunteered to give hostages for all this. Phaethon and his people held two assemblies; on the first day they did not lay aside a particle of their anger, but on the second day they softened, and the peace was made on these terms:

On the following conditions the Sunites and their allies make peace with the Moonites and their allies, to wit: That the Sunites tear down the dividing-wall and do not invade the moon again, and that they make over the prisoners of war, each at a set ransom; That the Moonites permit the stars to be autonomous, and do not make war on the Sunites; That each country aid the other if it be attacked; That in yearly tribute the King of the Moonites pay the King of the Sunites ten thousand gallons of dew, and that he give ten thousand

*vocabulary*

**ἄδύνατος** unable; impossible  
**ἄήρ** ἄέρος (ἄ, m) mist, air ~air  
**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute  
**ἀποικία** colony  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute  
**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy  
**δάκρυον** tear  
**δακρύω** weep  
**ἐγγράφω** engrave, enroll  
**ἐστιάω** give a feast  
**ἡλέκτρινος** of amber, electrum  
**καθαιρέω** take down, close ~heresy  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**κοινωνέω** associate with  
**μεθόριος** lying between  
**μετέχω** partake of  
**μυρίος** (ὄ) 10,000 ~myriad  
**ὄμηρος** insurance, hostage  
**ὄμνυμι** (ὄ) swear  
**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone  
**σελήνη** moon  
**στήλη** post, column  
**συνθήκη** combination; agreement  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis  
**ὑπαντιάζω** take a stand against  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia

μυρίους, καὶ ὁμήρους δὲ σφῶν αὐτῶν δοῦναι μυρίους, τὴν δὲ ἀποικίαν τὴν ἐς τὸν Ἑωσφόρον κοινῇ ποιεῖσθαι, καὶ μετέχειν τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον· ἐγγράψαι δὲ τὰς συνθήκας στήλῃ ἡλεκτρίνῃ καὶ ἀναστῆσαι ἐν μέσῳ τῷ ἀέρι ἐπὶ τοῖς μεθορίοις. ὤμοσαν δὲ Ἑλιωτῶν μὲν Πυρωνίδης καὶ Θερείτης καὶ Φλόγιος, Σεληνιτῶν δὲ Νύκτωρ καὶ Μήνιος καὶ Πολυλάμπης.

### 1.21

Τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο· εὐθὺς δὲ τὸ τεῖχος καθηρέϊτο καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἀπέδωσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικόμεθα ἐς τὴν σελήνην, ὑπηντίαζον ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡσπάζοντο μετὰ δακρύων οἳ τε ἐταῖροι καὶ ὁ Ἐνδυμίων αὐτός. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἡξιῶν μείναι τε παρ' αὐτῷ καὶ κοινωνεῖν τῆς ἀποικίας, ὑπισχνούμενος δώσειν πρὸς γάμον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ παῖδα· γυναῖκες γὰρ οὐκ εἰσὶ παρ' αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδαμῶς ἐπειθόμην, ἀλλ' ἡξιῶν ἀποπεμφθῆναι κάτω ἐς τὴν θάλατταν. ὥς δὲ ἔγνω ἀδύνατον ὃν πείθειν, ἀποπέμπει ἡμᾶς ἐστιάσας ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας.



μυρίους, καὶ |insurance, δὲ σφῶν αὐτῶν δοῦναι μυρίους,  
 |hostage  
 τὴν δὲ |colony τὴν ἐς τὸν Ἑωσφόρον κοινῇ ποιεῖσθαι,  
 καὶ |partake of τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον· |engrave, δὲ  
 |enroll  
 τὰς συνθήκας |post, |of amber, electrum' ἀστῆσαι ἐν μέσῳ  
 |column  
 τῷ |mist, air' τοῖς |lying ὥμοσαν δὲ Ἑλιωτῶν μὲν  
 |between  
 Πυρωνίδης καὶ Θερείτης καὶ Φλόγιος, Σεληνιτῶν δὲ  
 Νύκτωρ καὶ Μήνιος καὶ Πολυλάμπης.

## 1.21

Τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο· εὐθὺς δὲ τὸ τεῖχος |take down, close  
 καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς |captive ἀπέδοσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικόμεθα  
 ἐς τὴν |moon , |take a stand against καὶ |greet, salute μετὰ  
 δακρύων οἳ τε ἐταῖροι καὶ ὁ Ἐνδυμίων αὐτός. καὶ  
 ὁ μὲν ἡξίου μείναι τε παρ' αὐτῷ καὶ |associate with ἵς  
 ἀποικίας, |promise, agree δώσειν πρὸς |wedding, sex αὐτοῦ  
 παῖδα· γυναῖκες γὰρ οὐκ εἰσὶ παρ' αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ δὲ  
 |not anyone ἐπειθόμην, ἀλλ' ἡξίουν |send away κάτω  
 ἐς τὴν θάλατταν. ὥς δὲ ἔγνω |unable; ὃν πείθειν,  
 |impossible  
 |send away ἡμᾶς |give a feast ἑπτα ἡμέρας.

of his people as hostages; That the colony on the Morning Star be planted in common, and that anyone else who so desires may take part in it; That the treaty be inscribed on a slab of electrum and set up in mid-air, on the common confines. Attested under hand and seal.

(For the Sunites)

(For the Moonites)

Firebracedarklingparchermoonyburnsallbright

### 1.21

On those terms peace was made, and then the wall was torn down at once and we prisoners were restored. When we reached the moon we were met and tearfully welcomed by our comrades and by Endymion himself. He wanted me to stay with him and join the colony, promising to give me his own son in marriage—there are no women in their country. But I was not to be persuaded; I asked him to let me go down to the sea. When he perceived that he could not prevail on me, he let us go after entertaining us for seven days.

*vocabulary*

ἀνατέμνω cut up  
 ἀναφύω grow back  
 ἀποτέμνω cut off, sever ~tonsure  
 ἄρσῃ male  
 γαμέω marry, take as a lover ~bigamy  
 γάμος wedding, sex ~bigamy  
 γαστήρ -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
 γαστροκνημία calf of the leg  
 δένδρον tree  
 διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay  
 ~tribology  
 διηγέομαι detail, describe  
 ἐκτίθῃμι place outside at a spot ~thesis  
 ἔμβρυον young animal, embryo  
 ~embryo  
 ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue  
 ἐπειδάν when, after  
 καινός new, fresh, strange  
 κατανοέω notice, realize, learn

κλάδος branch, shoot  
 κνήμη lower leg  
 κυοφορέω be pregnant  
 κύω be pregnant  
 μεταξύ between  
 μέχρι as far as, until  
 νηδύς -ος (f) belly, womb  
 ὄρχις -τος (m) testicle ~orchid  
 παράδοξος incredible  
 παχύνω fatten  
 σάρκινος fleshy  
 σελήνη moon  
 συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
 φαλλός penis  
 φύλλον leaf  
 φυτεύω plant, grow, cause, prepare  
 ~physics  
 χάσχω gape

## 1.22-24

Ἄ Δὲ ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ διατρίβων ἐν τῇ σελήνῃ κατενόησα καινὰ καὶ παράδοξα, ταῦτα βούλομαι εἰπεῖν. πρῶτα μὲν τὸ μὴ ἐκ γυναικῶν γεννᾶσθαι αὐτούς, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῶν ἀρρένων· γάμοις γὰρ τοῖς ἄρρεσι χρώνται καὶ οὐδὲ ὄνομα γυναικὸς ὅλως ἴσασι. μέχρι μὲν οὖν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἐτῶν γαμεῖται ἕκαστος, ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων γαμεῖ αὐτός· κύουσι δὲ οὐκ ἐν τῇ νηδυί, ἀλλ' ἐν ταῖς γαστροκνημίαις· ἐπειδὴν γὰρ συλλάβῃ τὸ ἔμβρυον, παχύνεται ἡ κνήμη, καὶ χρόνῳ ὕστερον ἀνατεμόντες ἐξάγουσι νεκρά, ἐκθέντες δὲ αὐτὰ πρὸς τὸν ἄνεμον κεχηνότα ζωοποιοῦσιν. δοκεῖ δέ μοι καὶ ἐς τοὺς ἥΕλληνας ἐκείθεν ἦκειν τῆς γαστροκνημίας τοῦνομα, ὅτι παρ' ἐκείνοις ἀντὶ γαστρὸς κυοφορεῖ.

Μεῖζον δὲ τούτου ἄλλο διηγῆσομαι. γένος ἐστὶ παρ' αὐτοῖς ἀνθρώπων οἱ καλούμενοι Δενδρίται, γίνεται δὲ τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον. ὄρχιν ἀνθρώπου τὸν δεξιὸν ἀποτεμόντες ἐν γῇ φυτεύουσιν, ἐκ δὲ αὐτοῦ δένδρον ἀναφύεται μέγιστον, σάρκινον, οἷον φαλλός· ἔχει δὲ καὶ κλάδους καὶ φύλλα·

1.22-24

Ἄ Δὲ ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ |wear down, delay ᾧ |moon |notice, realize, learn  
 |new, fresh, |incredible , ταῦτα βούλομαι εἰπεῖν. πρῶτα  
 |strange  
 μὲν τὸ μὴ ἐκ γυναικῶν γεννᾶσθαι αὐτούς, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῶν  
 |male γάμοις γὰρ τοῖς |male χρώνται καὶ οὐδὲ ὄνομα  
 γυναικὸς ὅλως ἴσασι. μέχρι μὲν οὖν πέντε καὶ ἑξήκοσι ἐτῶν  
 γαμῖται ἕκαστος, ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων γαμῖ αὐτός· |be pregnant  
 δὲ οὐκ ἐν τῇ |belly, womb· ἐν ταῖς |calf of the leg ἐπειδὴν  
 γὰρ |seize, capture; |young , |fatten ἡ |lower leg αἱ χρόνῳ  
 |understand |animal,  
 ὕστερον |cut up |embryo ἐξάγουσι νεκρά, |place outside αὐτὰ  
 |at a spot  
 πρὸς τὸν ἄνεμον |gape ζωοποιοῦσιν. δοκεῖ δέ μοι  
 καὶ ἐς τοὺς ἥΕλληνας ἐκεῖθεν ἦκειν τῆς |calf of the leg  
 τοῦνομα, ὅτι παρ' ἐκείνοις ἀντὶ |belly |be pregnant  
 Μεῖζον δὲ τούτου ἄλλο |detail, |γένος ἐστὶ παρ' αὐτοῖς  
 |describe  
 ἀνθρώπων οἱ καλούμενοι Δενδρίται, γίνεταί δὲ τὸν τρόπον  
 τοῦτον. |testicle ἀνθρώπου τὸν δεξιὸν |cut off, sever ἐν γῇ  
 |plant, grow, ἐκ δὲ αὐτοῦ |tree |grow back μέγιστον,  
 |cause, prepare  
 |fleshy , οἶον |penis ἔχει δὲ καὶ |branch, καὶ |leaf  
 |shoot

**1.22-24**

In the interval, while I was living on the moon, I observed some strange and wonderful things that I wish to speak of. In the first place there is the fact that they are not born of women but of men: they marry men and do not even know the word woman at all! Up to the age of twenty-five each is a wife, and thereafter a husband. They carry their children in the calf of the leg instead of the belly. When conception takes place the calf begins to swell. In course of time they cut it open and deliver the child dead, and then they bring it to life by putting it in the wind with its mouth open. It seems to me that the term “belly of the leg” came to us Greeks from there, since the leg performs the function of a belly with them.

But I will tell you something else, still more wonderful. They have a kind of men whom they call the Arboreals, who are brought into the world as follows: Exsecting a man’s right testicle, they plant it in the ground. From it grows a very large tree of flesh, like a penis: it has branches and leaves,

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἄέρος (ᾱ, m) mist, air ~air  
**αἰδοῖον** genitals  
**αἰδοῖος** modest, honored  
**ἀναθυμιά** vaporize  
**ἀνακαίω** light (a fire) ~caustic  
**ἄνθραξ** -κος (m) coal; abscess  
**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet  
**ἀποθλίβω** (i) squeeze out; oppress  
**ἀπουρόω** meet foul winds  
**ἀφοδεύω** poop  
**βάλανος** (f) nut; pin, bolt  
**βάτραχος** frog  
**γαμέτης** -ου (m, 1) spouse  
**γαστροκνημία** calf of the leg  
**γηράσκω** grow old ~geriatric  
**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken  
**δρόσος** (f) dew, pure water  
**ἔδρα** (ᾱ) seat, seated group  
 ~polyhedron  
**ἐκχολάπτω** erase; hatch  
**ἐλεφάντινος** of ivory  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after

**εὖωχέω** fete, feed well  
**καπνός** smoke  
**κάπτω** gulp  
**κύλιξ** -κος (f) cup  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**ξύλινος** wooden  
**ὀπτάω** roast, bake  
**ὀχεύω** mount, have sex  
**πένης** -τος (m) poor  
**πεπαίνω** ripen  
**πηχυαῖος** a cubit long  
**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex  
**ποτός** potable  
**πρόσθετος** applied, added  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**συνουσία** society, sex  
**τετραίνω** pierce ~tribulation  
**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid  
**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy  
**τρογιάω** harvest grapes  
**ὕγρός** wet

ὁ δὲ καρπὸς ἐστὶ βάλανοι πηχναῖοι τὸ μέγεθος. ἐπειδὰν οὖν πεπανθῶσιν, τρυγήσαντες αὐτὰς ἐκκολάπτουσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. αἰδοῖα μέντοι πρόσθετα ἔχουσιν, οἱ μὲν ἐλεφάντινα, οἱ δὲ πένητες αὐτῶν ξύλινα, καὶ διὰ τούτων ὀχεύουσι καὶ πλησιάζουσι τοῖς γαμέταις τοῖς ἐαυτῶν. ἐπειδὰν δὲ γηράσῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, οὐκ ἀποθνήσκει, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ καπνὸς διαλυόμενος ἀήρ γίνεται.

Τροφή δὲ πᾶσιν ἡ αὕτη· ἐπειδὰν γὰρ πῦρ ἀνακαύσωσιν, βατράχους ὀπτῶσιν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνθράκων, πολλοὶ δὲ παρ' αὐτοῖς εἰσιν ἐν τῷ αέρι πετόμενοι· ὀπτωμένων δὲ περικαθεσθέντες ὥσπερ δὴ περὶ τράπεζαν κάπτουσιν τὸν ἀναθυμιώμενον καπνὸν καὶ εὐωχοῦνται. σίτῳ μὲν δὴ τρέφονται τοιούτῳ· ποτὸν δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐστὶν ἀήρ ἀποθλιβόμενος εἰς κύλικα καὶ ὑγρὸν ἀνιείς ὥσπερ δρόσον. οὐ μὲν ἀπουροῦσιν γε καὶ ἀφοδεύουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τέτρηνται ἥπερ ἡμεῖς, οὐδὲ τὴν συνουσίαν οἱ παῖδες ἐν ταῖς ἔδραις παρέχουσιν, ἀλλ' ἐν ταῖς ἰγνύσιν ὑπὲρ τὴν γαστροκνημίαν· ἐκεῖ γάρ εἰσι τετρημένοι.



ὁ δὲ καρπὸς ἐστὶ |nut; pin, |a cubit long ὃ μέγεθος. ἐπειδὴν  
 οὖν |ripen , |harvest grapes αὐτὰς |erase; hatch τοὺς  
 ἀνθρώπους. αἰδοῖα μέντοι |applied, ἔχουσιν, οἱ μὲν  
 |added  
 |of ivory , οἱ δὲ πένητες αὐτῶν |wooden καὶ διὰ τούτων  
 |mount, have sex |bring/be near; τοῖς |spouse τοῖς ἑαυτῶν.  
 |have sex  
 ἐπειδὴν δὲ γηράσῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, οὐκ ἀποθνήσκει, ἀλλ’  
 ὥσπερ καπνὸς διαλυόμενος ἀὴρ γίνεται.

Τροφὴ δὲ πᾶσιν ἡ αὐτή· ἐπειδὴν γὰρ πῦρ |light (a fire) ,  
 |frog |roast, bake ἐπὶ τῶν |coal; , πολλοὶ δὲ  
 |abscess  
 παρ’ αὐτοῖς εἰσιν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι πετόμενοι· |roast, bake  
 δὲ περικαθεσθέντες ὥσπερ δὴ περὶ τράπεζαν |gulp  
 τὸν |vaporize καπνὸν καὶ |fete, feed well. σίτω  
 μὲν δὴ τρέφονται τοιούτῳ· |potable δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐστὶν  
 ἀὴρ |squeeze out; oppress· |cup καὶ ὑγρὸν ἀνιείς ὥσπερ  
 |dew, pure water, ἤν |meet foul winds· καὶ |poop , ἀλλ’  
 οὐδὲ |pierce ἥπερ ἡμεῖς, οὐδὲ τὴν |society, sex οἱ  
 παῖδες ἐν ταῖς |seat παρέχουσιν, ἀλλ’ ἐν ταῖς ἰγνύσιν  
 ὑπὲρ τὴν |calf of the leg ἐκεῖ γάρ εἰσι |pierce .

and its fruit is acorns a cubit thick. When these ripen, they harvest them and shell out the men. Another thing, they have artificial penises that are sometimes of ivory and sometimes, with the poor, of wood, and make use of them when they mount their spouses. When a man grows old, he does not die, but is dissolved like smoke and turns into air.

They all eat the same food; they light a fire and cook frogs on the coals—they have quantities of frogs, that fly about in the air—and while they are cooking, they sit about them as if at table, snuff up the rising smoke and gorge themselves. This is the food they eat, and their drink is air, which is squeezed into a cup and yields a liquid like dew. They don't shit or piss, because they don't have the necessary orifices, and for the same reason they can't fuck boys in the ass, but there is another hole for that purpose, in the back of the knee.

A Man is thought beautiful in that country if he is

*vocabulary*

ἄκομος bald  
 ἄμπελος (f) vine  
 ἀναπίπτω fall back  
 ἀπομύσσω blow one's nose  
 ἀστήρ -έρος (m) star  
 βότρυς cluster of grapes  
 γάλα milk ~galaxy  
 γόνυ γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
 γυμνάζω exercise, do training  
 διαρρήγνυμι (ῥ) break through  
 διασεύω shake hard; confound  
 διηγέομαι detail, describe  
 δριμύς (ι) sharp, piercing, bitter  
 ἐκφύω spring from ~physics  
 ἔλαιον oil, olive oil ~olive  
 ἐμπίπτω fall into; attack ~petal  
 ἐπειδάν when, after  
 ἐπιστάζω dribble, instill  
 εὐώδης fragrant  
 θάλλω bloom, flourish, abound  
 ~thallium  
 ἰδρώ sweat ~exude  
 κατακλάω break off, break short

~iconoclast

καταπίπτω fall down ~petal  
 κομέω have long hair  
 κομήτης -ου (m, 1) long-haired  
 κράμβη cabbage  
 κρόμμυον onion  
 λιπαρός anointed, shining ~lipid  
 μέλι honey, a sweet  
 μονοδάκτυλος one-toed  
 μύρον oil, perfume  
 μυσάσσομαι be disgusted by  
 ὄνυξ -χος (m) claw, nail, hoof, talon  
 οὐρά tail  
 πήγνυμι (ῥ) stick, set, build ~fang  
 ποιόω make of a certain quality  
 πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia  
 πυγή (ῥ) butt  
 ῥάξ ῥαγός (f) grape  
 τυρός (ῥ) cheese  
 ὑδροφόρος water carrier  
 ὕπιος lying on one's back; flipped; flat  
 φαλακρός bald  
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
 χάλαζα hail

Καλὸς δὲ νομίζεται παρ' αὐτοῖς ἦν πού τις φαλακρὸς καὶ ἄκομος ἦ, τοὺς δὲ κομήτας καὶ μυσάττονται. ἐπὶ δὲ τῶν κομητῶν ἀστέρων τοῦναντίον τοὺς κομήτας καλοὺς νομίζουσιν· ἐπεδήμουν γάρ τινες, οἳ καὶ περὶ ἐκείνων διηγοῦντο. καὶ μὴν καὶ γένεια φύουσιν μικρὸν ὑπὲρ τὰ γόνατα. καὶ ὄνυχας ἐν τοῖς ποσὶν οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ἀλλὰ πάντες εἰσὶν μονοδάκτυλοι. ὑπὲρ δὲ τὰς πυγὰς ἐκάστω αὐτῶν κράμβη ἐκπέφυκε μακρὰ ὥσπερ οὐρά, θάλλουσα ἐς αἰὲ καὶ ὑπτίου ἀναπίπτοντος οὐ κατακλωμένη. ἀπομύττονται δὲ μέλι δριμύτατον· κάπειδαν ἢ πονῶσιν ἢ γυμνάζωνται, γάλακτι πᾶν τὸ σῶμα ἰδροῦσιν, ὥστε καὶ τυροὺς ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πήγνυνται, ὀλίγον τοῦ μέλιτος ἐπιστάζαντες· ἔλαιον δὲ ποιοῦνται ἀπὸ τῶν κρομμύων πάννυ λιπαρόν τε καὶ εὐῶδες ὥσπερ μύρον. ἀμπέλους δὲ πολλὰς ἔχουσιν ὑδροφόρους· αἱ γὰρ ῥᾶγες τῶν βοτρύων εἰσὶν ὥσπερ χάλαζα, καί, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, ἐπειδὴν ἐμπεσὼν ἄνεμος διασεισῇ τὰς ἀμπέλους ἐκείνας, τότε πρὸς ἡμᾶς καταπίπτει ἢ χάλαζα διαρραγόντων τῶν

Καλὸς δὲ νομίζεται παρ' αὐτοῖς ἦν πού τις |bald  
καὶ |bald ἦ, τοὺς δὲ |long-haired καὶ μυσάττονται. ἐπὶ  
δὲ τῶν κομητῶν ἀστέρων τὸναντίον τοὺς |long-haired  
καλοὺς νομίζουσιν· ἐπεδήμουν γάρ τινες, οἱ καὶ περὶ  
ἐκείνων διηγοῦντο. καὶ μὴν καὶ γένεια φύουσιν μικρὸν  
ὑπὲρ τὰ γόνατα. καὶ ὄνυχας ἐν τοῖς ποσὶν οὐκ  
ἔχουσιν, ἀλλὰ πάντες εἰσὶν |one-toed . ὑπὲρ δὲ  
τὰς |butt ἐκάστω αὐτῶν |cabbage |spring from μακρὰ  
ὥσπερ οὐρά, θάλλουσα ἐς αἰὲ καὶ |supine |fall back  
οὐ |break off, break. |blow one's nose δὲ |honey|sharp, pierc-  
|short |ing, bitter  
κἀπειδὰν ἢ πονῶσιν ἢ γυμνάζωνται, |milk πᾶν τὸ  
σῶμα |sweat , ὥστε καὶ |cheese ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πηγύννται,  
ὀλίγον τοῦ |honey |dribble, instill ἔλαιον δὲ |make of a cer-  
|tain quality  
ἀπὸ τῶν |onion πάνυ λιπαρόν τε καὶ |fragrant ὥσπερ  
|oil, perfume ἑλούς δὲ πολλὰς ἔχουσιν |water carrier αἱ γὰρ  
|grape τῶν βοτρυῶν εἰσὶν ὥσπερ |hail , καί, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν,  
ἐπειδὰν ἐμπεσὼν ἄνεμος |shake hard; confound^ους ἐκείνας,  
τότε πρὸς ἡμᾶς καταπίπτει ἢ |hail |break through τῶν

bald and hairless, and they quite detest longhaired people. It is different on the comets, where they think long-haired people beautiful—there were visitors in the moon who told us about them. Another point—they have beards that grow a little above the knee, and they have no toe-nails, but are all single-toed. Over each man's rump grows a long cabbage-leaf, like a tail, which is always green and does not break if he falls on his back. Their noses run honey of great pungency, and when they work or take exercise, they sweat milk all over their bodies, of such quality that cheese can actually be made from it by dripping in a little of the honey. They make oil from onions, and it is very clear and sweet-smelling, like myrrh. They have many water-vines, the grapes of which are like hailstones, and to my thinking, the hail that falls down on us is due to the bursting of the bunches when a wind strikes and shakes those vines. They

*vocabulary*

**ἀνοικτός** openable  
**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy  
 ~stand  
**ἀπόθετος** saved up  
**βότρυς** cluster of grapes  
**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
**δασύς** hairy, brushy  
**έντερον** guts ~entrails  
**έντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**έντοσθε** inside  
**έξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
**έπειδάν** when, after  
**έριον** wool ~Eriogonum  
**έσθής** clothes ~vest  
**κλειστός** locked, lockable ~clavicle  
**λάσιος** shaggy, overgrown ~lanolin

**μαλθακός** soft, timid  
**νεογνός** newborn  
**όκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry  
**όμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**πένης** -τος (m) poor  
**περιαιρετός** removable  
**πήρα** pouch, wallet  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**πολύχαλκος** bronze-rich  
**ρίγώ** feel cold ~frigid  
**σφέτερος** their  
**ύάλινος** of glass  
**ύποβρέχω** wet (under)  
**ύποδύομαι** (mp) get under; play a character  
**ύφαντός** woven  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

βοτρύων. τῇ μέντοι γαστρὶ ὅσα πῆρα χρώνται τιθέντες ἐν αὐτῇ ὅσων δέονται· ἀνοικτὴ γὰρ αὐτοῖς αὕτη καὶ πάλιν κλειστή ἐστιν· ἐντέρων δὲ οὐδὲν ὑπάρχειν αὐτῇ φαίνεται, ἢ τοῦτο μόνον, ὅτι δασεῖα πᾶσα ἔντοσθε καὶ λάσιός ἐστιν, ὥστε καὶ τὰ νεογνά, ἐπειδὰν ριγώσῃ, ἐς ταύτην ὑποδύεται.

## 1.25-26

Ἐσθῆς δὲ τοῖς μὲν πλουσίοις ὑαλίνη μαλθακή, τοῖς πένησι δὲ χαλκῇ ὑφαντή· πολύχαλκα γὰρ τὰ ἐκεῖ χωρία, καὶ ἐργάζονται τὸν χαλκὸν ὕδατι ὑποβρέξαντες ὥσπερ τὰ ἔρια.

Περὶ μέντοι τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν, οἷους ἔχουσιν, ὁκνῶ μὲν εἰπεῖν, μή τίς με νομίσῃ ψεύδεσθαι διὰ τὸ ἄπιστον τοῦ λόγου. ὅμως δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ἐρῶ· τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς περιαιρετοὺς ἔχουσι, καὶ ὁ βουλόμενος ἐξελὼν τοὺς αὐτοῦ φυλάττει ἔστ' ἂν δεηθῇ ἰδεῖν· οὕτω δὲ ἐνθέμενος ὁρᾷ· καὶ πολλοὶ τοὺς σφετέρους ἀπολέσαντες παρ' ἄλλων χρησάμενοι ὁρῶσιν. εἰσὶ δ' οἱ καὶ πολλοὺς ἀποθέτους



βοτρυών. τῇ μέντοι |belly ὅσα |pouch, |wallet χρώνται τιθέντες

ἐν αὐτῇ ὅσων δέονται· |openable γὰρ αὐτοῖς αὕτη καὶ πάλιν

|locked, ἐστίν· |guts δὲ οὐδὲν ὑπάρχειν αὐτῇ φαίνεται,  
|lockable

ἢ τοῦτο μόνον, ὅτι |hairy, πᾶσα |inside καὶ |shaggy ἐστίν,  
|brushy

ὥστε καὶ τὰ |newborn |when, |feel cold, ἐς ταύτην | (mp) get under; play a  
|after |character

1.25-26

|clothes δὲ τοῖς μὲν |wealth |of glass |soft, timid, τοῖς |poor

δὲ χαλκῇ |woven |bronze-rich γὰρ τὰ ἐκεῖ |area; downwards

ἐργάζονται τὸν χαλκὸν ὕδατι |wet (under) ὥσπερ τὰ

|wool.

Περὶ μέντοι τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν, οἷους ἔχουσιν, |hesitate; ἐν  
|worry

εἰπεῖν, μή τίς με νομίσῃ |be false, deceive; (mid)|not trusting, not  
|to lie |trustworthy

τοῦ λόγου. ὅμως δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ἐρῶ· τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς

|removable ἔχουσι, καὶ ὁ βουλόμενος |pick, steal; dedi- |τοῦ  
|cate; destroy

φυλάττει ἔστ' ἂν δεηθῇ ἰδεῖν· οὕτω δὲ |load; mp: ῥᾱ·  
|take to heart

καὶ πολλοὶ τοὺς |their ἀπολέσαντες παρ' ἄλλων

χρησάμενοι ὀρώσιν. εἰσὶ δ' οἱ καὶ πολλοὺς |saved up

use their bellies for pockets, putting into them anything they have use for, as they can open and shut them. These parts do not seem to have any intestines in them or anything else, except that they are all shaggy and hairy inside, so that the children enter them when it is cold.

#### 1.25-26

The clothing of the rich is malleable glass and that of the poor, spun bronze; for that region is rich in bronze, which they work like wool by wetting it with water.

I Am reluctant to tell you what sort of eyes they have, for fear that you may think me lying on account of the incredibility of the story, but I will tell you, notwithstanding. The eyes that they have are removable, and whenever they wish they take them out and put them away until they want to see: then they put them in and look. Many, on losing their own, borrow other people's

*vocabulary*

**ἀποβλέπω** stare at, adore  
**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere  
**βάλανος** (f) nut; pin, bolt  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**ἐκεῖσε** thither  
**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board ~basis  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**θαῦμα** -τος (n, 3) a wonder, feeling of  
 surprise ~theater  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater  
**κάτοπτρον** mirror  
**ξύλινος** wooden  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**οἰκειόω** adopt, adapt  
**οὔς οὔατος** (n) ear  
**πλάτανος** (f) sycamore  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**πότε** when?  
**ύάλινος** of glass  
**φρέαρ** well  
**φύλλον** leaf  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor

ἔχουσιν, οἱ πλούσιοι.

Τὰ ὦτα δὲ πλατάνων φύλλα ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς πλήν γε τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν Βαλάνων. ἐκεῖνοι γὰρ μόνοι ξύλινα ἔχουσιν.

Καὶ μὴν καὶ ἄλλο θαῦμα ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐθεασάμην· κάτοπτρον μέγιστον κείται ὑπὲρ φρέατος οὐ πάνυ βαθέος. ἂν μὲν οὖν εἰς τὸ φρέαρ καταβῇ τις, ἀκούει πάντων τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν ἐν τῇ γῇ λεγομένων, ἐὰν δὲ εἰς τὸ κάτοπτρον ἀποβλέψῃ, πάσας μὲν πόλεις, πάντα δὲ ἔθνη ὁρᾷ ὥσπερ ἐφεστῶς ἐκάστοις· τότε καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους ἐγὼ ἐθεασάμην καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν πατρίδα, εἰ δὲ ἀκείνοι ἐμὲ ἐώρων, οὐκέτι ἔχω τὸ ἀσφαλὲς εἰπεῖν. ὅστις δὲ ταῦτα μὴ πιστεύει οὕτως ἔχειν, ἂν ποτε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖσε ἀφίκηται, εἴσεται ὡς ἀληθῆ λέγω.

### 1.27-31

Τότε δ' οὖν ἀσπασάμενοι τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτόν, ἐμβάντες ἀνήχθημεν· ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἔδωκεν ὁ Ἐνδυμίων, δύο μὲν τῶν ὑαλίνων χιτῶνων, πέντε δὲ

ἔχουσιν, οἱ |wealth

Τὰ |ear δὲ |sycamore |leaf ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς πλήν γε τοῖς  
ἀπὸ τῶν |nut; pin, bolt ἵκεῖνοι γὰρ μόνοι |wooden ἔχουσιν.

Καὶ μὴν καὶ ἄλλο |wonder, ἵν' τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐθεασάμην·  
|surprise  
|mirror μέγιστον κεῖται ὑπὲρ |well οὐ πάνυ |high, deep  
ἂν μὲν οὖν εἰς τὸ |well καταβῇ τις, ἀκούει πάντων τῶν  
παρ' ἡμῖν ἐν τῇ γῇ λεγομένων, ἐὰν δὲ εἰς τὸ |mirror  
|stare at, adore ἄσας μὲν πόλεις, πάντα δὲ ἔθνη ὁρᾷ ὥσπερ  
|set; (mp) come/be |is· τότε καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους ἐγὼ ἐθεασάμην  
|near, direct, stop  
καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν πατρίδα, εἰ δὲ κάκεῖνοι ἐμὲ εἴρων, οὐκέτι  
ἔχω τὸ |safe, easy, ἵν' ὅστις δὲ ταῦτα μὴ πιστεύει οὕτως  
|steady, careful  
ἔχειν, ἂν ποτε καὶ αὐτὸς |thither ἀφίκηται, εἴσεται ὡς  
ἀληθῆ λέγω.

1.27-31

Τότε δ' οὖν |greet, salute τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ'  
αὐτόν, |step on, board ἵχθημεν· ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἔδωκεν ὁ  
Ἐνδυμίων, δύο μὲν τῶν |of glass |tunic , πέντε δὲ

to see with, and the rich folk keep a quantity stored up.

For ears they have plane-leaves, except only the acorn-men, who have wooden ones.

In the royal purlieus I saw another marvel. A large looking-glass is fixed above a well, which is not very deep. If a man goes down into the well, he hears everything that is said among us on earth, and if he looks into the looking-glass he sees every city and every country just as if he were standing over it. When I tried it I saw my family and my whole native land, but I cannot go further and say for certain whether they also saw me. Anyone who does not believe this is so will find, if ever he gets there himself, that I am telling the truth.

#### 1.27-31

To go back to my story, we embraced the king and his friends, went aboard, and put off. Endymion even gave me presents—two of the glass tunics, five of bronze, and a

*vocabulary*

ἀναχωρέω return, retreat ~heir  
 ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
 ἀριστερός left-hand  
 ἄρτι at the same time  
 ἄχρι as far as (+gen); until  
 ἐμβαίνω step on, board ~basis  
 ἔνσπονδος party to a truce  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπιθυμέω (ὄ) wish, covet  
 ἐπιπέτομαι fly at ~petal  
 ἑσπέρα evening, west  
 εὐθηλὴς flourishing  
 εὐδρος well watered  
 ἐφίημι (ἴ) send at, let fly; mp: rush at,  
 spring upon ~jet  
 ζωδιακός the zodiac  
 θέρμινος of lupines  
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although  
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon  
 κῆτος -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean

λυχνόπολις -τος (f) city of lamps  
 μεστός full  
 μισθοφορέω work for wages  
 πανοπλία suit of armor  
 παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba  
 παραπέμπω send via; escort ~pomp  
 παραπλέω sail past ~float  
 παράπλοος -υ coasting  
 παρήμι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
 πεντακόσιοι 500  
 πίων (ἴ) fat, rich, fertile ~pine  
 προσέχω direct to; think about  
 σταδίη (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl  
 noun) 200 meters  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 συμπέμπω send with ~pomp  
 συνοικίζω cohabit, colonize  
 ὑδρεύω draw water ~hydrogen  
 χίλιοι (ἴ) thousand ~kilo-

χαλκοῦς, καὶ πανοπλίαν θερμίνην, ἃ πάντα ἐν τῷ κήτει<sup>1</sup> κατέλιπον. συνέπεμψε δὲ ἡμῖν καὶ Ἴππογύπους χιλίους παραπέμψοντας ἄχρι σταδίων πεντακοσίων. ἐν δὲ τῷ παράπλῳ πολλὰς μὲν καὶ ἄλλας χώρας παρημέψαμεν, προσέσχομεν δὲ καὶ τῷ Ἑωσφόρῳ ἄρτι συνοικιζομένῳ, καὶ ἀποβάντες ὑδρευσάμεθα. ἐμβάντες δὲ εἰς τὸν ζῳδιακὸν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ παρήειμεν τὸν ἥλιον, ἐν χρῶ τὴν γῆν παραπλέοντες· οὐ γὰρ ἀπέβημεν καίτοι πολλὰ τῶν ἐταίρων ἐπιθυμούντων, ἀλλ' ὁ ἄνεμος οὐκ ἐφῆκεν. ἐθεώμεθα μέντοι τὴν χώραν εὐθαλῇ τε καὶ πίονα καὶ εὐδρον καὶ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν μεστήν. ἰδόντες δ' ἡμᾶς οἱ Νεφελοκένταυροι, μισθοφοροῦντες παρὰ τῷ Φαέθοντι, ἐπέπτησαν ἐπὶ τὴν ναῦν, καὶ μαθόντες ἐνσπόνδους ἀνεχώρησαν. ἤδη δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἴππόγυποι ἀπεληλύθεσαν.

Πλεύσαντες δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν, περὶ ἐσπέραν ἀφικόμεθα ἐς τὴν Λυχνόπολιν καλουμένην, ἣδη

<sup>1</sup> This first mention of a whale is not explained until a little later in the narrative. This may be part of the satirical imitation of writing by historians.



χαλκοῦς, καὶ |suit of armor |of lupines , ἃ πάντα ἐν τῷ |whale<sup>1</sup>  
κατέλιπον. |send with δὲ ἡμῖν καὶ Ἱππογύπους χιλίους  
|send via; escort |as far as (·+gen);500 . ἐν δὲ τῷ  
|until  
|coasting πολλὰς μὲν καὶ ἄλλας χώρας |pass by ,  
|direct to; think δὲ καὶ τῷ Ἑωσφόρῳ |at the|cohabit, colonize ,  
|about |same  
καὶ ἀποβάντες |draw water . |step on, board· εἰς τὸν  
|the zodiac ἐν |left-hand |dangle; pass τὸν ἥλιον, ἐν χρῶ  
|over, allow  
τὴν γῆν |sail past οὐ γὰρ ἀπέβημεν |and yet; and in  
|fact; although  
τῶν ἐταίρων ἐπιθυμούντων, ἀλλ' ὁ ἄνεμος οὐκ |send flying at  
ἐθεώμεθα μέντοι τὴν χώραν |flourishing - καὶ |fat καὶ  
|well watered· πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν |full . ἰδόντες δ' ἡμᾶς  
οἱ Νεφελοκένταυροι, |work for wages παρὰ τῷ Φαέθοντι,  
|fly at ἐπὶ τὴν ναῦν, καὶ μαθόντες |party to a truce  
|return, retreat . ἤδη δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἱππόγυποι ἀπεληλύθεσαν.  
Πλεύσαντες δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν, περὶ  
|evening, west· κόμεθα εἰς τὴν |city of lamps καλουμένην, ἤδη

<sup>1</sup> This first mention of a whale is not explained until a little later in the narrative. This may be part of the satirical imitation of writing by historians.

suit of lupine armour—but I left them all behind in the whale. He also sent a thousand Vulture Dragoons with us to escort us for sixty miles. On our way we passed many countries and put in at the Morning Star, which was just being colonised. We landed there and procured water. Going aboard and making for the zodiac, we passed the sun to port, hugging the shore. We did not land, though many of my comrades wanted to; for the wind was unfavourable. But we saw that the country was green and fertile and well-watered, and full of untold good things. On seeing us, the Cloud-centaurs, who had entered the service of Phaethon, flew up to the ship and then went away again when they found out that the treaty protected us. The Vulture Dragoons had already left us.

Sailing the next night and day we reached Lamp-town toward evening,

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἄέρος (ᾱ, m) mist, air ~air  
**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
**ἀπολογέομαι** defend one's conduct  
**ἀρχεῖον** central office  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**διατρίβω** (ιῖ) wear down, delay  
 ~tribology  
**ζωδιακός** the zodiac  
**καταδικάζω** give judgment  
**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp  
**λιμὴν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge  
 ~limnic  
**λυχνεών** -ος (m, 3) place for lamps  
**λύχνος** lamp

**μεταξύ** between  
**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἴκησις** -εως (f) habitation  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὄνομαστί** by name  
**πένης** -τος (m) poor  
**περιθέω** run around  
**περιφανής** conspicuous, notorious  
**προΐημι** send forth, abandon  
**σβέννυμι** (υῖ) extinguish, go out  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**ταπεινός** low  
**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic  
**ὕπνάω** sleep

τὸν κάτω πλοῦν διώκοντες. ἡ δὲ πόλις αὕτη κείται μεταξὺ τοῦ Πλειάδων καὶ τοῦ Ὑάδων ἀέρος, ταπεινότερα μέντοι πολὺ τοῦ ζῳδιακοῦ. ἀποβάντες δὲ ἄνθρωπον μὲν οὐδένα εὕρομεν, λύχνους δὲ πολλοὺς περιθέοντας καὶ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ καὶ περὶ τὸν λιμένα διατρίβοντας, τοὺς μὲν μικροὺς καὶ ὥσπερ πένητας, ὀλίγους δὲ τῶν μεγάλων καὶ δυνατῶν πάνυ λαμπροὺς καὶ περιφανεῖς. οἰκίσεις δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ λυχνεῶνες ἰδίᾳ ἐκάστω πεποιήντο, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὀνόματα εἶχον, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ φωνὴν προῖεμένων ἠκούομεν, καὶ οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς ἠδίκουν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐπὶ ξένια ἐκάλουν· ἡμεῖς δὲ ὅμως ἐφοβούμεθα, καὶ οὔτε δειπνῆσαι οὔτε ὑπνῶσαί τις ἡμῶν ἐτόλμησεν.

Ἀρχεῖα δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει πεποιήται, ἔνθα ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν διὰ νυκτὸς ὅλης κάθηται ὀνομαστὶ καλῶν ἕκαστον· ὃς δ' ἂν μὴ ὑπακούσῃ, καταδικάζεται ἀποθανεῖν ὥς λιπὼν τὴν τάξιν· ὁ δὲ θάνατός ἐστι σβεσθῆναι. παρεστῶτες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἐωρῶμεν τὰ γινόμενα καὶ ἠκούομεν ἅμα τῶν λύχνων ἀπολογουμένων καὶ τὰς αἰτίας λεγόντων

τὸν κάτω πλοῦν διώκοντες. ἡ δὲ πόλις αὕτη κεῖται

|between τοῦ Πλειάδων καὶ τοῦ Ὑάδων |mist, air|low

μέντοι πολὺ τοῦ |the zodiac . |leave, get off; δὲ ἄνθρωπον μὲν  
|turn out

οὐδένα εὔρομεν, |lamp δὲ πολλοὺς |run around καὶ ἐν

τῇ ἀγορᾷ καὶ περὶ τὸν |harbor, |wear down, delay οὗς μὲν  
|refuge

μικροὺς καὶ ὥσπερ |poor , ὀλίγους δὲ τῶν μεγάλων

καὶ δυνατῶν πάννυ |brilliant καὶ |conspicuous, οἰκήσεις  
|notorious

δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ |place for lamps ἔχ' ἑκάστῳ πεποιήντο, καὶ

αὐτοὶ ὀνόματα εἶχον, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ φωνὴν

|send forth, abandon' -μεν, καὶ οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς ἡδίκουν, ἀλλὰ καὶ

ἐπὶ |of hospitality -ν· ἡμεῖς δὲ |anyway, nevertheless , καὶ οὔτε

|eat, dine οὔτε ὑπνώσαί τις ἡμῶν ἐτόλμησεν.

|central δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει πεποιήται, ἔνθα ὁ  
|office

ἄρχων αὐτῶν διὰ νυκτὸς ὅλης κάθηται |by name καλῶν

ἕκαστον· ὃς δ' ἂν μὴ |listen, reply , |give judgment ἀποθανεῖν

ὥς λιπὼν τὴν τάξιν· ὁ δὲ θάνατός ἐστι |extinguish, go out

παρεστῶτες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἐωρῶμεν τὰ γινόμενα καὶ ἡκούομεν

ἅμα τῶν |lamp |defend one's conduct... τὰς αἰτίας λεγόντων

already being on our downward way. This city lies in the air midway between the Pleiades and the Hyades, though much lower than the Zodiac. On landing, we did not find any men at all, but a lot of lamps running about and loitering in the public square and at the harbour. Some of them were small and poor, so to speak: a few, being great and powerful, were very splendid and conspicuous. Each of them has his own house, or sconce, they have names like men, and we heard them talking. They offered us no harm, but invited us to be their guests. We were afraid, however, and none of us ventured to eat a mouthful or close an eye.

They have a public building in the centre of the city, where their magistrate sits all night and calls each of them by name, and whoever does not answer is sentenced to death for deserting. They are executed by being put out. We were at court, saw what went on, and heard the lamps defend themselves and

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἄέρος (ᾱ, m) mist, air ~air  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βραδύνω** make/be slow  
**γνωρίζω** make known, discover  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**ἐνδίδωμι** hand over, lend, show, allow  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπιβαίνω** (+gen) set foot on, board,  
 climb ~basis  
**θαυμάσιος** wonderful  
**καταθέω** run down  
**κατατίθηναι** put down, deposit, lay  
 aside ~thesis  
**λύχνος** lamp  
**μαλακός** soft

**μάτην** in vain, randomly  
**μεσημβρία** midday; the south  
**νέφος** -εος (n, 3) cloud ~nebula  
**οὐδαμοῦ** nowhere  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πυρώδης** fiery  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise  
**συνιζάνω** sink, collapse  
**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid  
**ὑπεραυγής** greatly shining  
**ὑπερήδομαι** rejoice greatly  
**ὑπερχαίρω** rejoice greatly at  
**φαντάζω** make visible; imagine  
**ψαύω** be closely touching  
**ὠκεανός** ocean

δι' ἧς ἐβράδυνον. ἔνθα καὶ τὸν ἡμέτερον λύχνον ἐγνώρισα,  
καὶ προσειπὼν αὐτὸν περὶ τῶν κατ' οἶκον ἐπνυθανόμην  
ὅπως ἔχοιεν· ὁ δέ μοι ἅπαντα ἐκεῖνα διηγῆσατο.

Τὴν μὲν οὖν νύκτα ἐκείνην αὐτοῦ ἐμείναμεν, τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ  
ἄραντες ἐπλέομεν ἤδη πλησίον τῶν νεφῶν· ἔνθα δὴ καὶ  
τὴν Νεφελοκοκκυγίαν πόλιν ἰδόντες ἐθαυμάσαμεν, οὐ  
μέντοι ἐπέβημεν αὐτῆς· οὐ γὰρ εἶα τὸ πνεῦμα. βασιλεύειν  
μέντοι αὐτῶν ἐλέγετο Κόρωνος ὁ Κοττυφίωνος. καὶ ἐγὼ  
ἐμνήσθην Ἀριστοφάνους τοῦ ποιητοῦ, ἀνδρὸς σοφοῦ καὶ  
ἀληθοῦς καὶ μάτην ἐφ' οἷς ἔγραψεν ἀπιστουμένου.

Τρίτῃ δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἡμέρα καὶ τὸν ὠκεανὸν ἤδη σαφῶς  
έωρώμεν, γῆν δὲ οὐδαμοῦ, πλήν γε τῶν ἐν τῷ αἱρί· καὶ  
αὐταὶ δὲ πυρώδεις καὶ ὑπερανγείς ἐφαντάζοντο.

Τῇ τετάρτῃ δὲ περὶ μεσημβρίαν μαλακῶς ἐνδιδόντος  
τοῦ πνεύματος καὶ συνιζάνοντος ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν  
κατετέθημεν. ὥς δὲ τοῦ ὕδατος ἐφάνυσamen, θαυμασίως  
ὑπερηδόμεθα καὶ ὑπερεχαίρομεν καὶ πᾶσαν ἐκ τῶν



δι' ας |make/be slow ἵνθα καὶ τὸν ἡμέτερον |lamp |make known, discover

καὶ προσειπὼν αὐτὸν περὶ τῶν κατ' οἶκον ἐπυνθανόμην

ὅπως ἔχοιεν· ὁ δέ μοι ἅπαντα ἐκέῖνα |detail,  
|describe

Τὴν μὲν οὖν νύκτα ἐκείνην αὐτοῦ ἐμείναμεν, τῇ δὲ |lie upon; approach

ἄραντες ἐπλέομεν ἤδη |near τῶν |cloud ἔνθα δὲ καὶ

τὴν Νεφελοκοκκυγίαν πόλιν ἰδόντες ἐθαυμάσαμεν, οὐ

μέντοι |(+gen) set foots· οὐ γὰρ εἶα τὸ πνεῦμα. |be king  
|on, board, climb

μέντοι αὐτῶν ἐλέγετο Κόρωνος ὁ Κοττυφίωνος. καὶ ἐγὼ

ἐμνήσθην Ἀριστοφάνους τοῦ ποιητοῦ, ἀνδρὸς |skilled,  
|clever, wise

ἀληθοῦς καὶ μάτην ἐφ' οἷς ἔγραψεν |disbelieve

Τρίτῃ δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἡμέρα καὶ τὸν |ocean ἤδη |clear, under-  
|standable

έωρώμεν, γῆν δὲ |nowhere , πλὴν γε τῶν ἐν τῷ |mist, air

αὐται δὲ |fiery καὶ |greatly  
|shining |make visible;  
|imagine

Τῇ |fourth δὲ περὶ |midday; the|soft |hand over, lend,  
|south |show, allow

τοῦ πνεύματος καὶ |sink, collapse ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν

κατετέθημεν. ὥς δὲ τοῦ ὕδατος |be closely|wonderful  
|touching

|rejoice greatly καὶ |rejoice greatly at καὶ πᾶσαν ἐκ τῶν

tell why they came late. There I recognised our own lamp: I spoke to him and enquired how things were at home, and he told me all about them.

That night we stopped there, but on the next day we set sail and continued our voyage. By this time we were near the clouds. There we saw the city of Cloudcuckootown, and wondered at it, but did not visit it, as the wind did not permit. The king, however, was said to be Crow Dawson. It made me think of Aristophanes the poet, a wise and truthful man whose writings are distrusted without reason.

On the next day but one, the ocean was already in plain sight, but no land anywhere except the countries in the air, and they began to appear fiery and bright.

Toward noon on the fourth day the wind fell gently and gave out, and we were set down on the sea. When we touched the water we were marvellously pleased and happy, made as merry as we could in

*vocabulary*

**ἀνίσχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἀπορρίπτω** cast away  
**ἀραιώμα** -τος (n, 3) crack, interstice  
**ἄφνω** suddenly, surprisingly  
**ἀφρός** foam  
**γαλήνη** stillness of wind or sea  
**ἐκφαίνω** bring to light ~photon  
**ἐλεφάντινος** of ivory  
**ἐνέχω** hold inside  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**εὐδία** fair weather  
**εὐσταθέω** be steady, healthy  
**εὐφροσύνη** happiness ~frenzy  
**καταπίνω** (ι) swallow  
**κῆτος** -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean  
**λευκός** white ~light  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**μεταβολή** change, exchange  
**νήχω** spin; swim ~neuro

**ὀδούς** -ντος (m) tooth  
**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
 ~pelagic  
**πεντακόσιοι** 500  
**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on  
 clothing ~ballistic  
**περικλύζω** wash all around  
**σκόλοψ** -πος (m) palisade, stake  
**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl  
 noun) 200 meters  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**συναράσσω** smash together  
**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea  
**ὕποφαίνω** show a little ~photon  
**ὕψηλός** high  
**φαλλός** penis  
**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip  
**χάσχω** gape  
**χίλιοι** (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

παρόντων εὐφροσύνην ἐποιούμεθα καὶ ἀπορρήψαντες ἐνηχόμεθα· καὶ γὰρ ἔτυχε γαλήνη οὐσα καὶ εὐσταθοῦν τὸ πέλαγος.

Ἄεοικε δὲ ἀρχὴ κακῶν μειζόνων γίνεσθαι πολλάκις ἢ πρὸς τὸ βέλτιον μεταβολή· καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς δύο μόνας ἡμέρας ἐν εὐδίᾳ πλεύσαντες, τῆς τρίτης ὑποφαινούσης πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα τὸν ἥλιον ἄφνω ὀρώμεν θηρία καὶ κήτη πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, ἐν δὲ μέγιστον ἀπάντων ὅσον σταδίων χιλίων καὶ πεντακοσίων τὸ μέγεθος· ἐπῆει δὲ κεχηγνὸς καὶ πρὸ πολλοῦ ταραττον τὴν θάλατταν ἀφρῶ τε περικλυζόμενον καὶ τοὺς ὀδόντας ἐκφαῖνον πολὺ τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν φαλλῶν ὑψηλοτέρους, ὅξεῖς δὲ πάντας ὥσπερ σκόλοπας καὶ λευκοὺς ὥσπερ ἐλεφαντίνους. ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν τὸ ὕστατον ἀλλήλους προσειπόντες καὶ περιβαλόντες ἐμένομεν·

Τὸ δὲ ἤδη παρῆν καὶ ἀναρροφήσαν ἡμᾶς αὐτῇ νηϊ κατέπιεν. οὐ μέντοι ἔφθη συναράξαι τοῖς ὀδοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τῶν ἀραιωμάτων ἢ ναῦς ἐς τὸ ἔσω διεξέπεσεν. ἐπεὶ

παρόντων |happiness ἐποιοῦμεθα καὶ |cast away

ἐνηχόμεθα· καὶ γὰρ ἔτυχε |stillness of ἡ καὶ |be steady, healthy  
|wind or sea  
|the open sea

Ἄεοικε δὲ ἀρχὴ κακῶν μειζόνων γίνεσθαι |often ἡ  
πρὸς τὸ βέλτιον μεταβολή· καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς δύο μόνas  
ἡμέρας ἐν εὐδία πλεύσαντες, τῆς τρίτης |show a little

πρὸς |raise; τὸν ἥλιον |suddenly, ἡμεῖς θηρία καὶ |whale  
|endure |surprisingly

πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, ἐν δὲ μέγιστον ἀπάντων ὅσον

σταδίων χιλίων καὶ |500 τὸ |tall, big |lie upon; approach

|gape καὶ πρὸ πολλοῦ |mess things up θάλατταν |foam

τε περικλυζόμενον καὶ τοὺς |tooth |bring to light λὺ τῶν

παρ' ἡμῖν |penis |high , ὅξεῖς δὲ πάντας ὥσπερ

|palisade, καὶ |white ὥσπερ |of ivory ἡμεῖς μὲν  
|stake

οὖν τὸ ὕστατον ἀλλήλους προσειπόντες καὶ |excel; don

ἐμένομεν·

Τὸ δὲ ἤδη παρῆν καὶ ἀναρροφήσαν ἡμᾶς αὐτῇ νηϊ

|swallow οὐ μέντοι |be first|smash τοῖς |tooth , ἀλλὰ  
|together

διὰ τῶν |crack, interstice ἡ ναῦς ἐς τὸ ἔσω διεξέπεσεν. ἐπεὶ

every way, and went over the side for a swim, for by good luck it was calm and the sea was smooth.

It would seem, however, that a change for the better often proves a prelude to greater ills. We had sailed just two days in fair weather and the third day was breaking when toward sunrise we suddenly saw a number of sea-monsters, whales. One among them, the largest of all, was fully one hundred and fifty miles long. He came at us with open mouth, dashing up the sea far in advance, foam-washed, showing teeth much larger than the phalluses in our country, and all sharp as calthrops and white as ivory. We said good-bye to one another, embraced, and waited.

He was there in an instant, and with a gulp swallowed us down, ship and all. He just missed crushing us with his teeth, but the boat slipped through the gaps between them into the interior. When we were



αὐτοὶ δὲ τὰ πυρεῖα συντρίψαντες καὶ ἀνακαύσαντες δείπνον ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἐποιούμεθα. παρέκειτο δὲ ἄφθονα καὶ παντοδαπὰ κρέα τῶν ἰχθύων (p. 120)

*vocabulary*

ἄγκυρα (ῥ) anchor  
 ἀλκυών -όνος (f, 3) kingfisher  
 ~halcyon  
 ἀνακαίω light (a fire) ~caustic  
 ἀναχάσκω gape  
 βλαστάνω bud, sprout  
 βλαστάω bud, sprout  
 γοῦν at least then  
 δακρύω weep  
 δεῖπνον meal, food  
 δεῖπνος meal, food  
 δένδρον tree  
 διακόσιοι (ᾱ) two hundred  
 ἐνδον in the house of; within  
 ἐνοικέω dwell in  
 ἐξεργάζομαι accomplish; undo  
 ἐστία hearth ~Hestia  
 θαλάσσιος marine, maritime  
 ἱλύς -ος (f, 3) mud, slime  
 ἱστίον sail ~stand  
 ἰχθύς -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
 καταπίνω (i) swallow  
 κύτος -εος (n, 3) a hollow, container  
 λάρος seagull

λάχανον garden herbs  
 λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
 μυρίανδρος (ῥ) pop. 10,000  
 νεοσσεύω hatch; nest  
 ὄρνειν bird ~ornithology  
 ὀστέον bone ~osteoporosis  
 παντῇ everywhere  
 παντοῖος all kinds of  
 παράκειμαι be at hand, ready  
 περίμετρος very long ~metric  
 πλατύς extensive, wide  
 πυρεῖον fire sticks  
 σκότος darkness, shadow ~shadow  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 συγκόπτω chop up; beat up  
 συνιζάνω sink, collapse  
 συντριβῶ pulverize  
 τεσσαράκοντα forty ~trapezoid  
 ὕλη (ῥ) forest, firewood  
 ὑποστηρίζω prop up, sustain  
 ὑψηλός high  
 φορτίον burden, load  
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

δὲ ἔνδον ἦμεν, τὸ μὲν πρῶτον σκότος ἦν καὶ οὐδὲν  
 ἑωρῶμεν, ὕστερον δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀναχανόντος εἶδομεν κύτος  
 μέγα καὶ πάντῃ πλατὺ καὶ ὑψηλόν, ἱκανὸν μυριάνδρῳ  
 πόλει ἐνοικεῖν. ἔκειντο δὲ ἐν μέσῳ καὶ μικροὶ ἰχθύες  
 καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ θηρία συγκεκομμένα, καὶ πλοίων ἰστία  
 καὶ ἄγκυραι, καὶ ἀνθρώπων ὀστέα καὶ φορτία, κατὰ  
 μέσον δὲ καὶ γῆ καὶ λόφοι ἦσαν, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, ἐκ τῆς  
 ἰλῦος ἦν κατέπινε συνιζάνουσα. ὕλη γοῦν ἐπ' αὐτῆς  
 καὶ δένδρα παντοῖα ἐπεφύκει καὶ λάχανα ἐβεβλαστήκει,  
 καὶ ἐώκει πάντα ἐξεργασμένοις· περίμετρον δὲ τῆς γῆς  
 στάδιοι διακόσιοι καὶ τεσσαράκοντα. ἦν δὲ ἰδεῖν καὶ  
 ὄρνεα θαλάττια, λάρους καὶ ἀλκύνοντας, ἐπὶ τῶν δένδρων  
 νεοττεύοντα.

## 1.32

Τότε μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ πολὺ ἐδακρύομεν, ὕστερον δὲ  
 ἀναστήσαντες τοὺς ἐταίρους τὴν μὲν ναῦν ὑπεστηρίξαμεν,  
 αὐτοὶ δὲ τὰ πυρεῖα συντρίβαντες καὶ ἀνακαύσαντες  
 δεῖπνον ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἐποιούμεθα. παρέκειτο δὲ





inside, it was dark at first, and we could not see anything, but afterwards, when he opened his mouth, we saw a great cavity, flat all over and high, and large enough for the housing of a great city. In it there were fish, large and small, and many other creatures all mangled, ships' rigging and anchors, human bones, and merchandise. In the middle there was land with hills on it, which to my thinking was formed of the mud that he had swallowed. Indeed, a forest of all kinds of trees had grown on it, garden stuff had come up, and everything appeared to be under cultivation. The coast of the island was twenty-seven miles long. Sea-birds were to be seen nesting on the trees, gulls and kingfishers.

**1.32**

At first we shed tears for a long time, and then I roused my comrades and we provided for the ship by shoring it up and for ourselves by rubbing sticks together, lighting a fire

*vocabulary*

ἄλλοτε at another time ~alien  
 ἀναχάσκω gape  
 ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful  
 βαδίζω walk, proceed  
 δηλώω show, disclose  
 διανίστημι awaken  
 διατριβή activity, waste of time  
 διατρίβω (ιῖ) wear down, delay  
 ~tribology  
 διαυγής translucent  
 διέρχομαι pierce, traverse  
 ἐθάς -δος (m, 3) customary  
 εἰκάζω liken; conjecture  
 ἔπαυλις -τος (f) farmhouse  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπιγραφή inscription  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
 ἰχθυάω to fish  
 ἰχθύς -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
 καπνός smoke  
 κῆτος -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean  
 κρέας -ως (n) meat ~creatine

νεανίσκος (ᾱ) young man  
 οὐπω no longer  
 παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold  
 παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold  
 περισκοπέω look around, inspect  
 πηγὴ headwaters, fountain  
 πηγός stout, mighty  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 πότε when?  
 πρασιά bed of herbs ~praseodymium  
 πρεσβύτης -ου (ῶ, m, 1) old person  
 πρόθυμος (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume  
 πρόσωθεν forward, in the future; far  
 σπουδὴ zeal; (dat) with difficulty,  
 hastily ~repudiate  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στήλη post, column  
 τάφος (m) funeral, grave; (n)  
 astonishment  
 ὕλακῃ barking, howling  
 ὕλη (ῶ) forest, firewood  
 ὕληεις (ῶ) wooded

ἄφθονα καὶ παντοδαπὰ κρέα τῶν ἰχθύων, καὶ ὕδωρ ἔτι τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Ἑωσφόρου εἶχομεν.

Τῇ ἐπιούσῃ δὲ διαναστάντες, εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι τὸ κῆτος, ἐωρῶμεν ἄλλοτε μὲν ὄρη, ἄλλοτε δὲ μόνον τὸν οὐρανόν, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ νήσους· καὶ γὰρ ἡσθανόμεθα φερομένου αὐτοῦ ὁξέως πρὸς πᾶν μέρος τῆς θαλάττης.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤδη ἐθάδες τῇ διατριβῇ ἐγενόμεθα, λαβὼν ἐπτὰ τῶν ἐταίρων ἐβάδιζον εἰς τὴν ὕλην περισκοπήσασθαι τὰ πάντα βουλόμενος. οὕπω δὲ πέντε ὅλους διελθὼν σταδίους εὖρον ἱερὸν Ποσειδῶνος, ὡς ἐδήλου ἡ ἐπιγραφή, καὶ μετ' οὐ πολὺ καὶ τάφους πολλοὺς καὶ στήλας ἐπ' αὐτῶν πλησίον τε πηγὴν ὕδατος διαυγοῦς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ κυνὸς ὑλακὴν ἡκούομεν καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο πόρρωθεν καὶ τινα καὶ ἔπαυλιν εἰκάζομεν.

### 1.33

Σπουδῇ οὖν βαδίζοντες ἐφιστάμεθα πρεσβύτῃ καὶ νεανίσκῳ μάλα προθύμως πρασιάν τινα ἐργαζόμενοι καὶ

|ungrudging, ` παντοδαπὰ |meat τῶν ἰχθύων, καὶ ὕδωρ ἔτι τὸ  
|plentiful  
ἐκ τοῦ Ἐωσφόρου εἶχομεν.

Τῇ |lie upon; ἀπ-|awaken , εἴ ποτε |gape τὸ |whale ,  
|proach  
ἐωρῶμεν |at another time`-η, |at another`time'. ον τὸν οὐρανόν,  
πολλάκις δὲ καὶ νήσους· καὶ γὰρ ἡσθάνομεθα φερομένου  
αὐτοῦ ὁξέως πρὸς πᾶν μέρος τῆς θαλάττης.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤδη |customary, διατριβῇ ἐγενόμεθα, λαβὼν ἑπτὰ  
τῶν ἐταίρων |walk, ἐς τὴν ὕλην |look around, inspect  
|proceed  
τὰ πάντα βουλόμενος. |no longer` πέντε ὅλους |pierce,  
|traverse  
σταδίους εὗρον ἱερὸν Ποσειδῶνος, ὡς |show, ἡ |inscription ,  
|disclose  
καὶ μετ' οὐ πολὺ καὶ |(m) funeral, grave; (n) as-|post, ἐπ'  
|tonishment |column  
αὐτῶν |hear τε πηγὴν ὕδατος |translucent ἔτι δὲ καὶ κυνὸς

|barking, ἡκούομεν καὶ |smoke ἐφαίνετο |forward, in the ἰ τινα  
|howling |future; far  
καὶ |farm- |likē;  
|house |conjecture

### 1.33

|zeal; (dat) ἑ with|walk, |set; (mp)|old person καὶ  
|difficulty, hastily |proceed |come/be near,  
νεανίσκῳ μάλα |willing, |direct stop α ἐργαζομένοις καὶ  
|eager |bed of herbs

and getting dinner as best we could. We had at hand plenty of fish of all kinds, and we still had the water from the Morning Star.

On rising the next day, whenever the whale opened his mouth we saw mountains one moment, nothing but sky the next, and islands frequently, and we perceived by this that he was rushing swiftly to all parts of the sea.

When at length we became wonted to our abiding-place, I took seven of my comrades and went into the forest, wishing to have a look at everything. I had not yet gone quite five furlongs when I found a temple of Poseidon, as the inscription indicated, and not far from it a number of graves with stones on them. Near by was a spring of clear water. We also heard the barking of a dog, smoke appeared in the distance, and we made out something like a farmhouse, too.

### 1.33

Advancing eagerly, we came upon an old man and a boy very busily at work in a garden which

*vocabulary*

ἀκριβής (ἰ) exact  
 ἄναυδος unable to speak ~Theravada  
 δαίμων -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom  
 ~demon  
 δεῦρο here, come here!  
 διοχετεύω channel, irrigate  
 δυστυχέω be unlucky  
 δυστυχής unlucky  
 εἰκάζω liken; conjecture  
 εἰκός likely  
 ἐνάλιος of the sea ~halogen  
 ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
 θαλάσσιος marine, maritime  
 καταπίνω (ἰ) swallow  
 κατείργω shut in; hinder

λάσιος shaggy, overgrown ~lanolin  
 νέηλυς newcomer  
 παραπλήσιος similar to  
 περιέχω (mid) protect  
 πηγὴ headwaters, fountain  
 πηγός stout, mighty  
 πότερος which, whichever of two  
 πρεσβύτης -ου (ῥ, m, 1) old person  
 προέρχομαι proceed, come out  
 πρῶην recently  
 σαυτοῦ yourself  
 σκάφος (τό) hull, ship; (ό) digging  
 συννήχομαι swim with  
 τύχη fortune, act of a god  
 ὕλη (ῥ) forest, firewood

ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τῆς πηγῆς ἐπ' αὐτὴν διοχετεύουσιν· ἡσθέντες οὖν ἅμα καὶ φοβηθέντες ἔστημεν· κακείμενοι δὲ ταῦτ' ἡμῖν ὥς τὸ εἰκὸς παθόντες ἄναυδοι παρειστήκεσαν· χρόνῳ δὲ ὁ πρεσβύτερος ἔφη, «Τίνες ὑμεῖς ἄρα ἐστέ, ὦ ξένοι; πότερον τῶν ἐναλίων δαιμόνων ἢ ἄνθρωποι δυστυχεῖς ἡμῖν παραπλήσιοι; καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἄνθρωποι ὄντες καὶ ἐν γῇ τραφέντες νῦν θαλάττιοι γεγόναμεν καὶ συννηχόμεθα τῷ περιέχοντι τούτῳ θηρίῳ, οὐδ' ὃ πάσχομεν ἀκριβῶς εἰδότες· τεθνάναι μὲν γὰρ εἰκάζομεν, ζῆν δὲ πιστεύομεν.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα ἐγὼ εἶπον· «Καὶ ἡμεῖς τοι ἄνθρωποι νεήλυδές ἐσμεν, ὦ πάτερ, αὐτῷ σκάφει πρῶτῃν καταποθέντες, προήλθομεν δὲ νῦν βουλόμενοι μαθεῖν τὰ ἐν τῇ ὕλῃ ὥς ἔχει· πολλὴ γάρ τις καὶ λάσιος ἐφαίνετο. δαίμων δέ τις, ὥς ἔοικεν, ἡμᾶς ἤγαγεν σέ τε ὀψομένους καὶ εἰσομένους ὅτι μὴ μόνοι ἐν τῷδε καθεύργμεθα τῷ θηρίῳ· ἀλλὰ φράσον γε ἡμῖν τὴν σουτοῦ τύχην, ὅστις τε ὢν καὶ ὅπως δεῦρο εἰσῆλθες.»

Ὁ δὲ οὐ πρότερον ἔφη εἶρεῖν οὐδὲ πεύσεσθαι παρ' ἡμῶν,



ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τῆς πηγῆς ἐπ' αὐτὴν |channel, irrigate |be pleased, enjoy

οὖν ἅμα καὶ φοβηθέντες ἔστημεν· κακείνοι δὲ ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν

ὥς τὸ |likely παθόντες |unable to speak...στήκεσαν· χρόνον

δὲ ὁ |old person ἔφη, «Τίνες ὑμεῖς ἄρα ἐστέ, ὦ ξένοι;

|which, ῥῶν |of the sea |a god, fate, doom ἱρωποι δυστυχεῖς  
|whichever

ἡμῖν |similar to , καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἄνθρωποι ὄντες καὶ ἐν

γῇ τραφέντες νῦν |marine, γεγόναμεν καὶ |swim with  
|maritime

τῷ |(mid) protect οὕτω θηρίῳ, οὐδ' ὃ πάσχομεν ἀκριβῶς

εἰδότες· τεθνάναι μὲν γὰρ |liken;  
|conjecture , ζῆν δὲ πιστεύομεν.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα ἐγὼ εἶπον· «Καὶ ἡμεῖς τοι ἄνθρωποι |newcomer

ἐσμεν, ὦ πάτερ, αὐτῷ σκάφει |recently |swallow ,

|proceed, come out ὅν βουλόμενοι μαθεῖν τὰ ἐν τῇ |forest, firewood  
|firewood

ἔχει· πολλὴ γάρ τις καὶ |shaggy ἐφαίνετο. |a god, fate, doom

ὥς ἔοικεν, ἡμᾶς ἤγαγεν σέ τε ὀψομένους καὶ εἰσομένους ὅτι

μὴ μόνοι ἐν τῷδε |shut in; hinder ὅτῳ θηρίῳ· ἀλλὰ φράσον

γε ἡμῖν τὴν |yourself |fortune, act 'tis τε ὧν καὶ ὅπως |here, come here!  
|of a god

εἰσῆλθες.»

Ὁ δὲ οὐ πρότερον ἔφη εἶρεῖν οὐδὲ πεύσεσθαι παρ' ἡμῶν,

they were irrigating with water from the spring. Joyful and fearful at the same instant, we stopped still, and they too, probably feeling the same as we, stood there without a word. In course of time the old man said: "Who are you, strangers? Are you sea-gods, or only unlucky men like us? As for ourselves, though we are men and were bred on land, we have become sea-creatures and swim about with this beast which encompasses us, not even knowing for certain what our condition is—we suppose that we are dead, but trust that we are alive."

To this I replied: "We too are men, my good sir—newcomers, who were swallowed up yesterday, ship and all: and we set out just now with the notion of finding out how things were in the forest, for it appeared to be very large and thick. But some divinity, it seems, brought us to see you and to discover that we are not the only people shut up in this animal. Do tell us your adventures—who you are and how you got in here."

But he said he would neither tell us nor question us before giving us

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἄέρος (ᾱ, m) mist, air ~air  
**ἄκροδρυα** -τος (n, 2) tree fruit  
**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**αὐτάνδρος** men and all  
**αὐτάρκης** self-sufficient  
**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken  
**διαπλέω** sail through  
**διέξειμι** pass through; recount ~ion  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**ἐγχέω** pour into  
**ἐμπορία** commerce  
**ἐνοικοδομέω** build in/up  
**ἐξῆς** in turn  
**εὐτυχής** fortunate  
**ἰχθύς** -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
**κατάδυσις** -εως (f) descent; hiding place  
**κῆτος** -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean

**κορέννυμι** (ῶ) sate; pf, mp: have enough ~cereal  
**λάχανον** garden herbs  
**μεταδίδωμι** give part of ~donate  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe  
**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house slave  
**παρατίθημι** put near, put at risk ~thesis  
**περιτυγχάνω** happen upon  
**ποικίλος** ornamented; various  
**στιβάς** -δος (f, 3) mattress  
**σφοδρός** vehement  
**τριταῖος** on the third day  
**ὑπερθαυμάζω** be greatly amazed  
**φόρτος** outward cargo ~bear  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
**ὠκεανός** ocean

πρὶν ξενίων τῶν παρόντων μεταδοῦναι, καὶ λαβὼν ἡμᾶς  
 ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὴν οἰκίαν ἐπεποίητο δὲ αὐτάρκη καὶ στιβάδας  
 ἐνωκοδόμητο καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐξήρτιστο παραθεὶς δὲ ἡμῖν  
 λάχανά τε καὶ ἀκρόδρυα καὶ ἰχθῦς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ οἶνον ἐγχέας,  
 ἐπειδὴ ἱκανῶς ἐκορέσθημεν, ἐπυνθάνετο ἃ πεπόνθειμεν·  
 καὶ γὰρ πάντα ἐξῆς διηγησάμην, τόν τε χειμῶνα καὶ τὰ ἐν  
 τῇ νήσῳ καὶ τὸν ἐν τῷ ἁέρι πλοῦν καὶ τὸν πόλεμον καὶ τὰ  
 ἄλλα μέχρι τῆς εἰς τὸ κῆτος καταδύσεως.

## 1.34-40

Ὁ Δὲ ὑπερθauμάσας καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν μέρει τὰ καθ' αὐτὸν  
 διεξῆγει λέγων, «Τὸ μὲν γένος εἰμί, ὦ ξένοι, Κύπριος,  
 ὁρμηθεὶς δὲ κατ' ἐμπορίαν ἀπὸ τῆς πατρίδος μετὰ  
 παιδός, ὃν ὁρᾶτε, καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν οἰκετῶν ἔπλεον  
 εἰς Ἰταλίαν ποικίλον φόρτον κομίζων ἐπὶ νεὼς μεγάλης,  
 ἦν ἐπὶ στόματι τοῦ κήτους διαλελυμένην ἴσως ἐωράκατε.  
 μέχρι μὲν οὖν Σικελίας εὐτυχῶς διεπλεύσαμεν· ἐκεῖθεν  
 δὲ ἄρπασθέντες ἀνέμῳ σφοδρῷ τριταῖοι ἐς τὸν ὠκεανὸν  
 ἀπηνέχθημεν, ἔνθα τῷ κήτει περιτυχόντες καὶ αὐτάνδρῳι

πρὶν |of hospitality παρόντων |give part of , καὶ λαβὼν ἡμᾶς

ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὴν οἰκίαν ἐπεποίητο δὲ |self-sufficient... |mattress

|build in/up καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐξήρτιστο |put near, δὲ ἡμῖν  
|put at risk

|garden τε καὶ |tree fruit καὶ ἰχθῦς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ οἶνον |pour into  
|herbs

ἐπειδὴ ἱκανῶς |sate; pf, mp:, ἐπυνθάνετο ἃ πεπόνθειμεν·  
|have enough

καὶ γὰρ πάντα ἐξῆς διηγησάμην, τὸν τε χειμῶνα καὶ τὰ ἐν

τῇ νήσῳ καὶ τὸν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι πλοῦν καὶ τὸν πόλεμον καὶ τὰ

ἄλλα μέχρι τῆς εἰς τὸ |whale |descent; hid-  
|ing place

1.34-40

Ὁ δὲ |be greatly amazed αἱ αὐτοὶ ἐν μέρει τὰ καθ' αὐτὸν

|pass through; -ν, «Τὸ μὲν γένος εἰμί, ὧς ξένοι, Κύπριος,  
|recount

ὁρμηθεὶς δὲ κατ' |commerce ἀπὸ τῆς πατρίδος μετὰ

παιδός, ὃν ὀράτε, καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν |household; ἵπλεον  
|house slave

εἰς Ἰταλίαν |orna- |outward κομίζων ἐπὶ νεὼς μεγάλης,  
|mented |cargo

ἦν ἐπὶ στόματι τοῦ |whale |break up; relax, ἵσως ἐωράκατε.  
|weaken

μέχρι μὲν οὖν Σικελίας |fortunate |sail through ἐκείθεν

δὲ |carry off, seize ἀνέμῳ |vehement |on the third day |ocean

|carry off , ἔνθα τῷ |whale |happen upon καὶ |men and all

what entertainment he could command, and he took us with him to the house. It was a commodious structure, had bunks built in it and was fully furnished in other ways. He set before us vegetables, fruit and fish and poured us out wine as well. When we had had enough, he asked us what had happened to us. I told him about everything from first to last—the storm, the island, the cruise in the air, the war and all the rest of it up to our descent into the whale.

#### 1.34-40

He expressed huge wonder, and then told us his own story, saying: “By birth, strangers, I am a Cypriote. Setting out from my native land on a trading venture with my boy whom you see and with many servants besides, I began a voyage to Italy, bringing various wares on a great ship, which you no doubt saw wrecked in the mouth of the whale. As far as Sicily we had a fortunate voyage, but there we were caught by a violent wind and driven out into the ocean for three days, where we fell in with

*vocabulary*

ἄγρεύω catch (prey, fish)  
 ἀκρόδρουα -τος (n, 2) tree fruit  
 ἄμπελος (f) vine  
 ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful  
 βαρέω be heavy with ~baritone  
 βαρύς heavy ~baritone  
 βίος life ~biology  
 βραγχίον fin; gill  
 γείτων -ονος (f) neighbor  
 δέμω build ~domicile  
 εἰσπέτομαι fly into ~petal  
 ἐξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion  
 ἐπιθυμέω (ὑ) wish, covet  
 εὐνή bed; (pl) anchor stones  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
 θάπτω bury ~epitaph  
 θηρεύω hunt, fish ~fierce  
 ἰχθύς -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
 καίω burn ~caustic  
 καταπίνω (ι) swallow  
 κατάποσις -εως (f) swallowing; gullet  
 κηπεύω to garden  
 λάχανον garden herbs

λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
 λούω wash, bathe  
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
 ναυπηγέω build ships  
 νήχω spin; swim ~neuro  
 ὄρνειν bird ~ornithology  
 παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold  
 παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold  
 πάροικος neighboring; foreign  
 περίμετρος very long ~metric  
 πηγὴ headwaters, fountain  
 πηγός stout, mighty  
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far  
 σιτέομαι (ι) eat ~parasite  
 σκάφος (τό) hull, ship; (ό) digging  
 σταδίη (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 σφόδρα very much  
 ὕλη (ὑ) forest, firewood  
 φύλλον leaf  
 ψυχρός (ὑ) cold ~psychology

καταποθέντες δύο ἡμεῖς μόνοι τῶν ἄλλων ἀποθανόντων  
ἐσώθημεν.

«Θάψαντες δὲ τοὺς ἐταίρους καὶ ναὸν τῷ Ποσειδῶνι  
δειμάμενοι τουτονὶ τὸν βίον ζῶμεν, λάχανα μὲν  
κηπεύοντες, ἰχθῦς δὲ σιτούμενοι καὶ ἀκρόδρυα. πολλή  
δέ, ὥς ὀράτε, ἡ ὕλη, καὶ μὴν καὶ ἀμπέλους ἔχει πολλάς,  
ἀφ' ὧν ἡδύτατος οἶνος γεννᾶται· καὶ τὴν πηγὴν δὲ ἴσως  
εἶδετε καλλίστου καὶ ψυχροτάτου ὕδατος. εὐνὴν δὲ ἀπὸ  
τῶν φύλλων ποιούμεθα, καὶ πῦρ ἄφθονον καίομεν, καὶ  
ὄρνεα δὲ θηρεύομεν τὰ εἰσπετόμενα, καὶ ζῶντας ἰχθῦς  
ἀγρεύομεν ἐξιόντες ἐπὶ τὰ βραγχία τοῦ θηρίου, ἔνθα καὶ  
λουόμεθα, ὅποτεν ἐπιθυμήσωμεν. καὶ μὴν καὶ λίμνη οὐ  
πόρρω ἐστὶν σταδίων εἴκοσι τὴν περίμετρον, ἰχθῦς ἔχουσα  
παντοδαπούς, ἐν ᾗ καὶ νηχόμεθα καὶ πλέομεν ἐπὶ σκάφους  
μικροῦ, ὃ ἐγὼ ἐναυπηγησάμην.

«Ἔτη δέ ἐστιν ἡμῖν τῆς καταπόσεως ταῦτα ἑπτὰ καὶ  
εἴκοσι. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἴσως φέρειν δυνάμεθα, οἱ δὲ  
γείτονες ἡμῶν καὶ πάροιχοι σφόδρα χαλεποὶ καὶ βαρεῖς



|swallow δύο ἡμεῖς μόνοι τῶν ἄλλων ἀποθανόντων  
ἐσώθημεν.

«|bury δὲ τοὺς ἐταίρους καὶ |temple :ᾠ Ποσειδῶνι

|build τουτονὶ τὸν βίον ζῶμεν, |garden μὲν  
|herbs

|to garden , |fish δὲ σιτούμενοι καὶ |tree fruit πολλή

δέ, ὡς ὀράτε, ἡ ὕλη, καὶ μὴν καὶ |vine ἔχει πολλὰς,

ἀφ' ᾧ |sweet οἶνος γεννᾶται· καὶ τὴν πηγὴν δὲ ἴσως

εἶδετε καλλίστου καὶ |cold ὕδατος. |bed; (pl) an- :ὁ  
|chor stones

τῶν |leaf ποιούμεθα, καὶ πῦρ |ungrudging, :όμεν, καὶ  
|plentiful

|bird δὲ |hunt, fish τὰ |fly into , καὶ ζῶντας |fish

|catch (prey;|go forth; :πὶ τὰ |fin; gill τοῦ θηρίου, ἔνθα καὶ  
|fish) |is possible

|wash, , ὅποταν ἐπιθυμήσωμεν. καὶ μὴν καὶ |lake, marsh,  
|bathe |basin, sea

|forward, in the σταδίων εἴκοσι τὴν περίμετρον, |fish ἔχουσα  
|future; far

παντοδαπούς, ἐν ᾗ καὶ |spin; swim καὶ πλέομεν ἐπὶ σκάφους

μικροῦ, ὃ ἐγὼ |build ships

«Ἐτη δέ ἐστιν ἡμῖν τῆς |swallowing; ταῦτα ἐπὶ καὶ  
|gullet

εἴκοσι. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἴσως φέρειν δυνάμεθα, οἱ δὲ

|neighbor ἡμῶν καὶ |neighboring; :όδρα χαλεποὶ καὶ βαρεῖς  
|foreign

the whale, were swallowed up crew and all, and only we two survived, the others being killed.

“We buried our comrades, built a temple to Poseidon and live this sort of life, raising vegetables and eating fish and nuts. As you see, the forest is extensive, and besides, it contains many grape-vines, which yield the sweetest of wine. No doubt you noticed the spring of beautiful cold water, too. We make our bed of leaves, burn all the wood we want, snare the birds that fly in, and catch fresh fish by going into the gills of the animal. We also bathe there when we care to. Another thing, there is a lake not far off, twenty furlongs in circumference, with all kinds of fish in it, where we swim and sail in a little skiff that I made.

“It is now twenty-seven years since we were swallowed. Everything else is perhaps endurable, but our neighbours and fellow-countrymen are extremely quarrelsome and unpleasant, being unsociable and savage.” “What!” said I,

*vocabulary*

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture

ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad

ἄλλόκοτος weird

ἄμικτος unmixed

ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;

upwards, out to sea

ἄξενος inhospitable

γαλεώτης -ου (m, 1) gecko; swordfish;  
weasel

δρομικός swift; of racing

ἐγγελυωπός eel-eyed

ἐρῆμος empty

ἐσπέριος evening, western ~west

ἑως morning; eastern

θρασύς brave, strong

καραβοπρόσωπος (ἄ) lobster-faced

κῆτος -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean

λαιός left; thrush

μάχιμος warlike

μεσόγαια inland

μορφή beauty

νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

οἰκέω inhabit ~economics

ὅμως anyway, nevertheless

ὄστρειον oyster

οὐραῖος of the tail

πεντακόσιοι 500

πλευρά rib, side ~pleurisy

προσδοκάω expect

προσκλύζω wash

συμμαχία alliance

τοιχος wall of a house

ὕλη (ῥ) forest, firewood

ὑποτελέω pay a tax

φιλία friendship ~philanthropy

φίλιος friendly

φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
~bear

φόρον forum

φόρος tribute, revenue

ὠμοφάγος raw flesh-eating

είσιν, ἄμικτοί τε ὄντες καὶ ἄγριοι.»

«Ἡ Γάρ,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «καὶ ἄλλοι τινές εἰσιν ἐν τῷ κήτει;»

«Πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν,» ἔφη, «καὶ ἄξενοι καὶ τὰς μορφὰς ἀλλόκοτοι· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐσπέρια καὶ οὐραῖα τῆς ὕλης Ταριχᾶνες οἰκοῦσιν, ἔθνος ἐγγελυωπὸν καὶ καραβοπρόσωπον, μάχιμον καὶ θρασὺ καὶ ὠμοφάγον· τὰ δὲ τῆς ἐτέρας πλευρᾶς κατὰ τὸν δεξιὸν τοῖχον Τριτωνομένδητες, τὰ μὲν ἄνω ἀνθρώποις ἐοικότες, τὰ δὲ κάτω τοῖς γαλεώταις, ἦττον μέντοι ἄδικοί εἰσιν τῶν ἄλλων· τὰ λαιὰ δὲ Καρκινόχειρες καὶ Θυννοκέφαλοι συμμαχίαν τε καὶ φιλίαν πρὸς ἑαυτοὺς πεποιημένοι· τὴν δὲ μεσόγαιαν νέμονται Παγουρίδαι καὶ Ψηττόποδες, γένος μάχιμον καὶ δρομικώτατον· τὰ ἐῷα δέ, τὰ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στόματι, τὰ πολλὰ μὲν ἔρημά ἐστι, προσκλυζόμενα τῇ θαλάττῃ· ὅμως δὲ ἐγὼ ταῦτα ἔχω φόρον τοῖς Ψηττόποσιν ὑποτελῶν ἐκάστου ἔτους ὅστρεια πεντακόσια. τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ χώρα ἐστίν· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρή ὁρᾶν ὅπως δυνησόμεθα τοσούτοις ἔθνεσι μάχεσθαι καὶ ὅπως

εἶσιν, |unmixed τε ὄντες καὶ |wild, . . . »  
|savage

«Ἡ Γάρ,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «καὶ ἄλλοι τινές εἰσιν ἐν τῷ |whale,»

«Πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν,» ἔφη, «καὶ |inhospitable τὰς |beauty

|weird τὰ μὲν γὰρ |evening, καὶ |of the tail τῆς  
|western

ὑλῆς Ταριχᾶνες |inhabit , ἔθνος |eel-eyed καὶ

|lobster-faced , |warlike καὶ |brave, καὶ |flesh-eating  
|strong

τὰ δὲ τῆς ἐτέρας |rib, side κατὰ τὸν δεξιὸν |wall of a house

Τριτωνομένδητες, τὰ μὲν ἄνω ἀνθρώποις ἐοικότες, τὰ

δὲ κάτω τοῖς |gecko; sword-ῖπτον μέντοι |unfair; ob-ν τῶν  
|fish; weasel |stinate, bad

ἄλλων· τὰ |left; Δὲ Καρκινόχειρες καὶ Θυννοκέφαλοι  
|thrush

|alliance τε καὶ φιλίαν πρὸς ἑαυτοὺς πεποιημένοι·

τὴν δὲ μεσόγαιαν |distribute Παγουρίδαι καὶ Ψηττόποδες,

γένος |warlike καὶ |swift; of racing τὰ |morning; τὰ  
|eastern

πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στόματι, τὰ πολλὰ μὲν ἔρημά ἐστι,

|wash τῇ θαλάττῃ· |anyway, nevertheless τὰ ἔχω

φόρον τοῖς Ψηττόποσιν ὑποτελῶν ἐκάστου ἔτους |oyster

|500 τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ χώρα ἐστίν· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρὴ ὁρᾶν

ὅπως δυνησόμεθα τοσούτοις ἔθνεσι μάχεσθαι καὶ ὅπως

“are there other people in the whale, too?”

“Why, yes, lots of them,” said he; “they are unfriendly and are oddly built. In the western part of the forest, the tail part, live the Broilers, an eel-eyed, lobster-faced people that are warlike and bold, and carnivorous. On one side, by the starboard wall, live the Mergoats, like men above and catfish below: they are not so wicked as the others. To port there are the Crabclaws and the Codheads, who are friends and allies with each other. The interior is inhabited by Clan Crawfish and the Solefeet, good fighters and swift runners. The eastern part, that near the mouth, is mostly uninhabited, as it is subject to inundations of the sea. I live in it, however, paying the Solefeet a tribute of five hundred oysters a year. Such being the nature of the country, it is for you to see how we can fight with all these tribes and how we

*vocabulary*

**ἀδελής** (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos  
**ἄνοπλος** unarmed  
**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned  
**ἀποδιώκω** chase away  
**ἀπόδοσις** -τος (f) payment; definition  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate  
**βίος** life ~biology  
**βιοτεύω** live, live on  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**ἐνίστημι** install; threaten; block  
**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐφοδος** accessible; inspector; entrance;  
 attack  
**θόρυβος** noise, clamor  
**ιχθυάω** to fish

**ιχθύς** -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ὀστέον** bone ~osteoporosis  
**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so  
**πόσος** how many, much, far?  
**προθεσμία** appointed time  
**ὕπεροπτικός** contemptuous, disdainful  
**ὕποπτεύω** guess, observe, be  
 suspicious of  
**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
 ~bear  
**φόρον** forum  
**φόρος** tribute, revenue  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage  
**χίλιοι** (ι) thousand ~kilo-

βιοτεύσομεν.»

«Πόσοι δέ,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «πάντες οὗτοί εἰσιν;»

«Πλείους,» ἔφη, «τῶν χιλίων.»

«Ἦοπλα δὲ τίνα ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς;»

«Οὐδέν,» ἔφη, «πλὴν τὰ ὁστὰ τῶν ἰχθύων.»

«Οὐκοῦν,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «ἄριστα ἂν ἔχοι διὰ μάχης ἐλθεῖν αὐτοῖς, ἅτε οὔσιν ἀνόπλοις αὐτούς γε ὠπλισμένους· εἰ γὰρ κρατήσομεν αὐτῶν, ἀδεῶς τὸν λοιπὸν βίον οἰκήσομεν.»

Ἦεδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἀπελθόντες ἐπὶ ναῦν παρεσκευαζόμεθα. αἰτία δὲ τοῦ πολέμου ἔμελλεν ἔσεσθαι τοῦ φόρου ἢ οὐκ ἀπόδοσις, ἥδη τῆς προθεσμίας ἐνεστώσης. καὶ δὴ οἱ μὲν ἔπεμπον ἀπαιτοῦντες τὸν δασμόν· ὁ δὲ ὑπεροπτικῶς ἀποκρινάμενος ἀπεδίωξε τοὺς ἀγγέλους. πρῶτοι οὖν οἱ Ψηττόποδες καὶ οἱ Παγουρίδαι χαλεπαίνοντες τῷ Σκινθάρῳ— τοῦτο γὰρ ἐκαλεῖτο— μετὰ πολλοῦ θορύβου ἐπήεσαν. ἡμεῖς δὲ τὴν ἔφοδον ὑποπτεύοντες



|live, live on . . .»

«|how many, much, far? , ὥ, «πάντες οὗτοί εἰσιν;»

«Πλείους,» ἔφη, «τῶν χιλίων.»

«Ἦοπλα δὲ τίνα ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς;»

«Οὐδέν,» ἔφη, «πλὴν τὰ |bone τῶν ἰχθύων.»

«|not so?; and 'so , ' ἐγώ, «ἄριστα ἂν ἔχοι διὰ μάχης ἐλθεῖν  
αὐτοῖς, ἅτε οὖσιν |unarmed αὐτούς γε |prepare, arm εἰ γὰρ  
κρατήσομεν αὐτῶν, |fearless τὸν λοιπὸν |life |inhabit . . .»

Ἄεδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἀπελθόντες ἐπὶ ναῦν παρεσκευαζόμεθα.

αἰτία δὲ τοῦ πολέμου ἔμελλεν ἔσεσθαι τοῦ φόρου ἢ οὐκ

|payment; , ἥδη τῆς |appointed time|install; threaten; αἰ δὲ οἱ  
|definition |block

μὲν ἔπεμπον |demand to τὸν |portion, τὸν |tax, contemptuous,  
|have returned |tribute |disdainful

ἀποκρινάμενος |chase away τοὺς ἀγγέλους. πρῶτοι οὖν

οἱ Ψηττόποδες καὶ οἱ Παγουρίδαι |be violent, rage τῷ

Σκινθάρῳ— τοῦτο γὰρ ἐκαλεῖτο— μετὰ πολλοῦ |noise,  
|clamor

|lie upon; approach τῇν |acces- |guess, observe,  
|sible; |be suspicious of  
|inspec-  
|tor; en-  
|trance;  
|attack

are to get a living.”

“How many are there of them in all?” said I.

“More than a thousand,” said he.

“What sort of weapons have they?”

“Nothing but fishbones,” he said.

“Then our best plan,” said I, “would be to meet them in battle, as they are unarmed and we have arms. If we defeat them, we shall live here in peace the rest of our days.”

This was resolved on, and we went to the boat and made ready. The cause of war was to be the withholding of the tribute, since the date for it had already arrived. They sent and demanded the tax, and he gave the messengers a contemptuous answer and drove them off. First the Solefeet and Clan Crawfish, incensed at Scintharus—for that was his name—came on with a great uproar. Anticipating

*vocabulary*

ἀναμένω wait for ~remain  
 ἀναπήγνυμι (ῥ) impale  
 ἀριθμός number  
 ἄχρι as far as (+gen); until  
 δελφίς -νος (m) dolphin  
 διακινδυνεύω (ῥ) take risks  
 διαπείρω pierce  
 ἐβδομήκοντα 70  
 ἐνέδρα ambush, trickery  
 ἐξοπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite  
 ἐπανίστημι rise up at one's bidding  
 ~station  
 ἐπαυλίζομαι camp on, near  
 ἐπειδάν when, after  
 εὐώνυμος honored; left-hand  
 καταδιώκω chase hard  
 κατόπιν behind, hereafter  
 κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
 κόπτω beat, cut, strike

κυβερνήτης -ου (m, 1) steersman,  
 governor ~govern  
 λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
 μετάφρενον person's back ~frenzy  
 ξηρός dry, the land ~xeriscape  
 παρέρχομαι pass, escape  
 πλευρά rib, side ~pleurisy  
 προερέω say beforehand  
 προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
 ~legion  
 προτάσσω place in front  
 ῥάχις -τος (f) spine, lower back  
 ῥώμη strength, might  
 συστρατεύω join in an expedition  
 τρίγλη red mullet  
 τρόπαιον victory monument  
 τροπή rout, turning of an enemy  
 ~trophy  
 ὑπαντιάζω take a stand against  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 φωλεός -οῦ den, lair

ἐξοπλισάμενοι ἀνεμόμενοι, λόχον τινὰ προτάξαντες ἀνδρῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι. προείρητο δὲ τοῖς ἐν τῇ ἐνέδρᾳ, ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσι παρεληλυθότας τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπανίστασθαι· καὶ οὕτως ἐποίησαν. ἐπαναστάντες γὰρ κατόπιν ἔκοπτον αὐτούς, καὶ ἡμεῖς δὲ αὐτοὶ πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι τὸν ἀριθμὸν ὄντες καὶ γὰρ ὁ Σκίνθαρος καὶ ὁ παῖς αὐτοῦ συνεστρατεύοντο ὑπηντιάζομεν, καὶ συμμίζαντες θυμῷ καὶ ῥώμῃ διεκινδυνεύομεν. τέλος δὲ τροπὴν αὐτῶν ποιησάμενοι κατεδιώξαμεν ἄχρι πρὸς τοὺς φωλεούς. ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν πολεμίων ἐβδομήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν, ἡμῶν δὲ εἰς καὶ ὁ κυβερνήτης, τρίγλης πλευρᾷ διαπαρεῖς τὸ μετάφρενον. ἐκείνην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ τὴν νύκτα ἐπηλυσάμεθα τῇ μάχῃ καὶ τρόπαιον ἐστήσαμεν ῥάχιν ξηρὰν δελφίνος ἀναπήξαντες.

Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι αἰσθόμενοι παρήσαν, τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν κέρας ἔχοντες οἱ Ταριχᾶνες ἡγείτο δὲ αὐτῶν Πήλαμος τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον οἱ Θυννοκέφαλοι, τὸ μέσον δὲ οἱ Καρκινόχειρες· οἱ γὰρ Τριτωνομένδητες

|prepare, arm      |wait for      ,      |ambush,      band, |place in front  
|childbirth

ἀνδρῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι. προεῖρητο δὲ τοῖς ἐν τῇ

|ambush,      ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσι παρεληλυθότας τοὺς πολεμίους,  
|trickery

|rise up at one's      καὶ οὕτως ἐποίησαν.      |rise up at one's γὰρ  
|bidding      |bidding

κατόπιν |beat, cut, strike ὕς, καὶ ἡμεῖς δὲ αὐτοὶ πέντε καὶ

εἴκοσι τὸν |number ὄντες καὶ γὰρ ὁ Σκίνθαρος καὶ ὁ παῖς

αὐτοῦ |join in an expedition |take a stand against... συμμίζαντες

θυμῷ καὶ |strength |take risks      τέλος δὲ |rout,      αὐτῶν  
|might      |turning

ποιησάμενοι |chase hard ἄχρι πρὸς τοὺς |den, lair

ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν πολεμίων |70      καὶ ἑκατόν,

ἡμῶν δὲ εἷς καὶ ὁ |steersman,      , |red mullet |rib, side |pierce  
|governor

τὸ |person's back ἐκείνην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ τὴν νύκτα

|camp on, near      τῇ μάχῃ καὶ |victory      ἐστήσαμεν |spine,  
|monument      |lower  
|back

|dry, the |dolphin      |impale  
|land

Τῇ |the next; later... καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι αἰσθόμενοι παρήσαν, τὸ

μὲν δεξιὸν κέρας ἔχοντες οἱ Ταριχᾶνες ἡγείτο δὲ αὐτῶν

Πήλαμος τὸ δὲ |honored; left-hand ὀκέφαλοι, τὸ μέσον δὲ οἱ

Καρκινόχειρες· οἱ γὰρ Τριτωνομένδητες

their attack, we were waiting under arms, having previously posted in our front-a squad of twenty-five men in ambush, who had been directed to fall on the enemy when they saw that they had gone by, and this they did. Falling on them in the rear, they cut them down, while we ourselves, twenty-five in number (for Scintharus and his son were in our ranks), met them face to face and, engaging them, ran our hazard with strength and spirit. Finally we routed them and pursued them clear to their dens. The slain on the side of the enemy were one hundred and seventy; on our side, one—the sailing-master, who was run through the midriff with a mullet-rib. That day and night we bivouacked on the field and made a trophy by setting up the dry spine of a dolphin.

On the following day the others, who had heard of it, appeared, with the Broilers, led by Tom Cod, on the right wing, the Codheads on the left, and the Crabclaws in the centre. The Mergoats did not

*vocabulary*

ἀδελής (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos  
 ἀμπελουργέω tend vines  
 ἀναιρέω take up ~heresy  
 ἄρδην completely; all at once  
 ἅτε as if; since  
 ἄφυκτος inevitable; caught  
 ἄω aor: to sate ~sate  
 βράγχιον fin; gill  
 βραγχίον fin; gill  
 γυμνάσιον exercise; school  
 γυμνής light infantry; serf  
 δένδρον tree  
 δεσμωτήριον prison  
 διαδιδράσκω escape  
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion  
 ἐκκόπτω cut out, down, off  
 ἐπέρχομαι approach, arrive  
 ἐπικρατέω rule over  
 ἐρῆμος empty  
 ἡσυχία peace and quiet

θρύπτω break into pieces ~drop  
 καταδιώκω chase hard  
 κῆρυξ -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
 κῆτος -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean  
 κυνηγέσιον hunt  
 οὐδέτερος neither  
 προαιρέω produce; (m) prefer  
 προαπαντάω go to meet, intercept  
 σπένδω libate; (mid) make a treaty  
 ~spontaneous  
 σπήλαιον grotto, cavern  
 συγκομίζω gather  
 συμμαχέω be an ally  
 συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix  
 τρυφάω luxuriate, revel ~drop  
 ὕλη (ῥ) forest, firewood  
 ὕληεις (ῥ) wooded  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 φίλιος friendly  
 χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir

τὴν ἡσυχίαν ἦγον οὐδετέροις συμμαχεῖν προαιρούμενοι.  
 ἡμεῖς δὲ προαπαντήσαντες αὐτοῖς παρὰ τὸ Ποσειδώνιον  
 συνεμίξαμεν πολλῇ βοῇ χρώμενοι, ἀντήχει δὲ τὸ  
 κῆτος ὥσπερ τὰ σπήλαια. τρεψάμενοι δὲ αὐτούς, ἅτε  
 γυμνήτας ὄντας, καὶ καταδιώξαντες ἐς τὴν ὕλην τὸ  
 λοιπὸν ἐπεκρατοῦμεν τῆς γῆς. καὶ μετ' οὐ πολὺ,  
 κήρυκας ἀποστέιλαντες νεκρούς τε ἀνηροῦντο καὶ περὶ  
 φιλίας διελέγοντο· ἡμῖν δὲ οὐκ ἐδόκει σπένδεσθαι,  
 ἀλλὰ τῇ ὑστεραία χωρήσαντες ἐπ' αὐτοὺς πάντας  
 ἄρδην ἐξεκόψαμεν πλὴν τῶν Τριτωνομενδῆτων.  
 οὗτοι δέ, ὥς εἶδον τὰ γινόμενα, διαδράντες ἐκ  
 τῶν βραγχείων ἀφῆκαν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν.  
 ἡμεῖς δὲ τὴν χώραν ἐπελθόντες ἔρημον ἤδη οὔσαν  
 τῶν πολεμίων τὸ λοιπὸν ἀδεῶς κατακοῦμεν, τὰ  
 πολλὰ γυμνασίοις τε καὶ κυνηγεσίοις χρώμενοι καὶ  
 ἀμπελουργοῦντες καὶ τὸν καρπὸν συγκομιζόμενοι τὸν ἐκ  
 τῶν δένδρων, καὶ ὅλως ἐώκειμεν τοῖς ἐν δεσμωτηρίῳ  
 μεγάλῳ καὶ ἀφύκτῳ τρυφῶσι καὶ λελυμένοις.



τὴν |peace and quiet |neither |be an ally |produce; (m) prefer  
 ἡμεῖς δὲ |go to meet, intercept αὐτοῖς παρὰ τὸ Ποσειδώνιον  
 |mix with πολλῇ βοῇ χρώμενοι, ἀντήχει δὲ τὸ  
 |whale ὥσπερ τὰ |grotto, |cavern τρεψάμενοι δὲ αὐτούς, ἅτε  
 |light ὄντας, καὶ |chase hard ἐς τὴν ὕλην τὸ  
 |infantry;  
 |serf λοιπὸν |rule over τῆς γῆς. καὶ μετ' οὐ πολὺ,  
 |henchman, |ποστείλαντες νεκρούς τε |take up καὶ περὶ  
 |functionary  
 |friendly |go through, debate δὲ οὐκ ἐδόκει |libate; (mid)  
 |make a treaty  
 ἀλλὰ τῇ |the next; |withdraw, give ἐπ' αὐτοὺς πάντας  
 |later |way to (+dat)  
 |com- |cut out, down, off λὴν τῶν Τριτωνομενδῆτων.  
 |pletely; all  
 |at once οὗτοι δέ, ὥς εἶδον τὰ γινόμενα, |escape ἐκ  
 τῶν βραγχιῶν ἀφῆκαν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν.  
 ἡμεῖς δὲ τὴν χώραν |approach, ἔρημον ἤδη οὖσαν  
 |arrive  
 τῶν πολεμίων τὸ λοιπὸν |fearless κατωκοῦμεν, τὰ  
 πολλὰ |exercise; τε καὶ |hunt χρώμενοι καὶ  
 |school  
 |tend vines καὶ τὸν καρπὸν |gather τὸν ἐκ  
 τῶν |tree , καὶ ὅλως ἐώκειμεν τοῖς ἐν |prison  
 μεγάλῳ καὶ |inevitable; τρυφῶσι καὶ λελυμένοις.  
 |caught

take the field, choosing not to ally themselves with either party. Going out to meet them, we engaged them by the temple of Poseidon with great shouting, and the hollow re-echoed like a cave. Routing them, as they were light-armed, and pursuing them into the forest, we were thenceforth masters of the land. Not long afterwards they sent heralds and were for recovering their dead and conferring about an alliance, but we did not think it best to make terms with them. Indeed, on the following day we marched against them and utterly exterminated them, all but the Mergoats, and they, when they saw what was doing, ran off through the gills and threw themselves into the sea. Occupying the country, which was now clear of the enemy, we dwelt there in peace from that time on, constantly engaging in sports, hunting, tending vines and gathering the fruit of the trees. In short, we resembled men leading a life of luxury and roaming at large in a great prison that they

*vocabulary*

**ἀνέρπω** creep upward  
**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ῥ) open  
**ἄνοιξις** -εως (f) opening  
**ἅπαξ** once  
**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy  
 ~stand  
**αὐτόκλαδος** branches and all  
**ἄφνω** suddenly, surprisingly  
**βοά** din, a shout  
**βοεύς** βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**εἰρεσία** rowing ~row  
**ἐκάτερος** each of two  
**ἐνατος** ninth  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year  
**ἐπιμήκης** long, oblong  
**ἐφεξῆς** in order, in a row  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**ἡμισταδιαῖος** 1/2 a stadium  
**θέαμα** -τος (ᾱα, n, 3) sight, spectacle  
**θόρυβος** noise, clamor

**ἱστορέω** inquire; relate  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**κέλευθος** (f) way, path  
**κῆτος** -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean  
**κυπάρισσος** (f) cypress  
**κωπηλατέω** row  
**ὀδούς** -ντος (m) tooth  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**παράδοξος** incredible  
**πέμπτος** fifth ~pentagon  
**περίμετρος** very long ~metric  
**προσπλέω** sail toward, against  
**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea  
**τεκμαίρομαι** conclude, declare from evidence  
**τριήρης** trireme ~row  
**ὕψηλός** high

Ἐνιαυτὸν μὲν οὖν καὶ μῆνας ὀκτῶ τοῦτον διήγομεν τὸν τρόπον. τῷ δ' ἐνάτῳ μηνὶ πέμπτη ἰσταμένου, περὶ τὴν δευτέραν τοῦ στόματος ἀνοίξιν ἅπαξ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο κατὰ τὴν ὥραν ἐκάστην ἐποίει τὸ κῆτος, ὥστε ἡμᾶς πρὸς τὰς ἀνοίξεις τεκμαίρεσθαι τὰς ὥρας περὶ οὖν τὴν δευτέραν, ὥσπερ ἔφην, ἀνοίξιν, ἄφνω βοή τε πολλή καὶ θόρυβος ἠκούετο καὶ ὥσπερ κελεύσματα καὶ εἰρεσίαι· ταραχθέντες οὖν ἀνερπύσαμεν ἐπ' αὐτὸ τὸ στόμα τοῦ θηρίου καὶ στάντες ἐνδοτέρῳ τῶν ὀδόντων καθεωρῶμεν ἀπάντων ὧν ἐγὼ εἶδον θεαμάτων παραδοξότατον, ἀνδρας μεγάλους, ὅσον ἡμισταδιαίους τὰς ἡλικίας, ἐπὶ νήσων μεγάλων προσπλέοντας ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τριήρων. οἶδα μὲν οὖν ἀπίστοις εἰκότα ἱστορήσων, λέγω δὲ ὅμως. νῆσοι ἦσαν ἐπιμήκεις μὲν, οὐ πάνυ δὲ ὑψηλαί, ὅσον ἑκατὸν σταδίων ἐκάστη τὸ περίμετρον· ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτῶν ἔπλεον τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐκείνων ἀμφὶ τοὺς εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν· τούτων δὲ οἱ μὲν παρ' ἐκάτερα τῆς νήσου καθήμενοι ἐφεξῆς ἐκωπηλάτουν κυπαρίττοις μεγάλαις αὐτοκλάδοις καὶ

Ἐνιαυτὸν μὲν οὖν καὶ μῆνας |eight| τοῦτον |lead through; ,  
 |pass a time|  
 τρόπον. τῷ δ' |ninth| μηνὶ |fifth| ἵσταμένου, περὶ  
 τὴν δευτέραν τοῦ στόματος |opening| |once| γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο  
 κατὰ τὴν ὥραν ἐκάστην ἐποίει τὸ |whale|, ὥστε ἡμᾶς  
 πρὸς τὰς ἀνοίξεις |conclude, declare| ἰς ὥρας περὶ οὖν τὴν  
 |from evidence|  
 δευτέραν, ὥσπερ ἔφην, |opening|, |suddenly, ,  
 |surprisingly| τε πολλή καὶ  
 |noise,| ἠκούετο καὶ ὥσπερ κελεύσματα καὶ εἰρεσαί·  
 |clamor|  
 |mess things up| οὖν |creep upward| ἐπ' αὐτὸ τὸ στόμα τοῦ  
 θηρίου καὶ στάντες |in the house ^ of;|tooth| |look down|  
 |within|  
 ἀπάντων ὧν ἐγὼ εἶδον |sight,| |incredible|, ἄνδρας  
 |spectacle|  
 μεγάλους, ὅσον |1/2 a stadium| τὰς |time of life, con-| ἡσων  
 |temporaries|  
 μεγάλων |sail toward, against| περ ἐπὶ τριήρων. οἶδα μὲν οὖν  
 |not trusting, ,  
 |trustworthy| |not inquire;|, λέγω δὲ ὅμως. νῆσοι ἦσαν  
 |relate|  
 |long,| μὲν, οὐ πάνυ δὲ |high|, ὅσον ἑκατὸν σταδίων  
 |oblong|  
 ἐκάστη τὸ περίμετρον· ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτῶν ἔπλεον τῶν ἀνδρῶν  
 ἐκείνων ἀμφὶ τοὺς εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν· τούτων δὲ οἱ μὲν  
 παρ' ἑκάτερα τῆς νήσου καθήμενοι |in order|row|  
 |in a row|  
 |cypress| μεγάλαις |branches and all...|

cannot break out of.

For a year and eight months we lived in this way, but on the fifth day of the ninth month, about the second mouth-opening—for the whale did it once an hour, so that we told time by the openings—about the second opening, as I said, much shouting and commotion suddenly made itself heard, and what seemed to be commands and oar-beats. Excitedly we crept up to the very mouth of the animal, and standing inside the teeth we saw the most unparalleled of all the sights that ever I saw—huge men, fully half a furlong in stature, sailing on huge islands as on galleys. Though I know that what I am going to recount savours of the incredible, I shall say it nevertheless. There were islands, long but not very high, and fully a hundred furlongs in circumference, on each of which about a hundred and twenty of those men were cruising, some of whom, sitting along each side of the island one behind the other, were rowing with huge cypress trees for

*vocabulary*

**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀντίπρωρος** with the prow toward  
**ἀπολύω** loose, free from ~loose  
**αὐτόκομος** shaggy; leaves and all  
**διαγωνίζομαι** contend against  
**διίστημι** stand apart ~stand  
**εἰρεσία** rowing ~row  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἑξακόσιοι** 600  
**ἐπιβαίνω** (+gen) set foot on, board, climb ~basis  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῥ) display, exhibit  
**ἑρετμός** rowing  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station  
**ἱστίον** sail ~stand  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καρτερός** strong, staunch  
**καταδύω** enter, sink  
**κατόπιν** behind, hereafter  
**κελευστής** -οῦ (m, 1) boatswain,

coxswain  
**κινέω** (ι) set in motion, move, remove  
 ~kinetic  
**κολπώω** swell, fold  
**κόμη** hair ~comet  
**κόρυς** helmet  
**κυβερνήτης** -ου (m, 1) steersman, governor ~govern  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature  
**ναυμαχέω** fight at sea  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**πενταστάδιος** of 5 stades  
**πηδάλιον** rudder  
**προθυμία** (ῥ) zeal, alacrity ~fume  
**πρύμνα** stern  
**πρῶρα** bow, prow ~prolog  
**σμπλέκω** twine together  
**συναράσσω** smash together  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty ~trapezoid  
**τετταράκοντα** forty  
**ὕλη** (ῥ) forest, firewood  
**ὕψηλός** high

αὐτοκόμοις ὥσπερ ἑρετμοῖς, κατόπιν δὲ ἐπὶ τῆς πρύμνης, ὡς ἐδόκει, κυβερνήτης ἐπὶ λόφου ὑψηλοῦ εἰστήκει χάλκεον ἔχων πηδάλιον πεντασταδιαῖον τὸ μῆκος· ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς πρῶρας ὅσον τετταράκοντα ὠπλισμένοι αὐτῶν ἐμάχοντο, πάντα ἐοικότες ἀνθρώποις πλὴν τῆς κόμης· αὕτη δὲ πῦρ ἦν καὶ ἐκάετο, ὥστε οὐδὲ κορύθων ἐδέοντο. ἀντὶ δὲ ἰστίων ὁ ἄνεμος ἐμπίπτων τῇ ὕλῃ, πολλῇ οὔσῃ ἐν ἐκάστῃ, ἐκόλπου τε ταύτην καὶ ἔφερε τὴν νῆσον ἥ ἐθέλοι ὁ κυβερνήτης· κελευστής δὲ ἐφειστήκει αὐτοῖς, καὶ πρὸς τὴν εἰρεσίαν ὀξέως ἐκινοῦντο ὥσπερ τὰ μακρὰ τῶν πλοίων.

## 1.41

Τὸ μὲν οὖν πρῶτον δύο ἢ τρεῖς ἐωρῶμεν, ὕστερον δὲ ἐφάνησαν ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι, καὶ διαστάντες ἐπολέμουν καὶ ἐναυμάχουν. πολλαὶ μὲν οὖν ἀντίπρωροι συνηράσσοντο ἀλλήλαις, πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ ἐμβληθεῖσαι κατεδύοντο, αἱ δὲ συμπλεκόμεναι καρτερῶς διηγωνίζοντο καὶ οὐ ῥαδίως ἀπελύοντο· οἱ γὰρ ἐπὶ τῆς πρῶρας τεταγμένοι πᾶσαν ἐπεδείκνυντο προθυμίαν ἐπιβαίνοντες καὶ ἀναιροῦντες·



|shaggy; leaves ὅσπερ ἑρετμοῖς, κατόπιν δὲ ἐπὶ τῆς |stern  
 and all  
 ὡς ἐδόκει, |steersman, ἐπὶ |neck, crést on a ἑίστήκει χάλκεον  
 governor |helmet, hilltop  
 ἔχων |rudder |of 5 stades τὸ |length, ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς  
 |stature  
 |bow, prow ἵσον τετταράκοντα |prepare, arm αὐτῶν ἐμάχοντο,  
 πάντα εὐκότες ἀνθρώποις πλὴν τῆς |hair αὕτη δὲ  
 πῦρ ἦν καὶ ἐκάετο, ὥστε οὐδὲ |helmet ἐδέοντο. ἀντὶ  
 δὲ |sail ὁ ἄνεμος ἐμπίπτων τῇ |forest, ...λλῇ οὔσῃ ἐν  
 |firewood  
 ἐκάστη, |swell, fold ἐ ταύτην καὶ ἔφερε τὴν νῆσον ἣ ἐθέλοι ὁ  
 |steersman, |boatswain, δὲ ἐφειστήκει αὐτοῖς, καὶ πρὸς τὴν  
 governor |coxswain  
 |rowing ὁξέως |move, ὥσπερ τὰ μακρὰ τῶν πλοίων.  
 |remove

# 1.41

Τὸ μὲν οὖν πρῶτον δύο ἢ τρεῖς ἐωρῶμεν, ὕστερον δὲ  
 ἐφάνησαν ὅσον |600 , καὶ |stand apart ἐπολέμουν καὶ  
 |fight at sea . πολλὰ μὲν οὖν |with the prow|smash together  
 |toward  
 ἀλλήλαις, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἐμβληθεῖσαι |enter, sink , αἱ δὲ  
 |twine together |strong, |contend against καὶ οὐ ῥαδίως  
 |staunch  
 ἀπελύοντο· οἱ γὰρ ἐπὶ τῆς |bow, prow ἑταγμένοι πᾶσαν  
 |display, exhibit |zeal, alacrity ἐπιβαίνοντες καὶ ἀναιροῦντες·

oars—branches, leaves and all! Aft at the stern, as I suppose you would call it, stood the master on a high hill, holding a bronze tiller five furlongs in length. At the bow, about forty of them under arms were fighting; they were like men in all but their hair, which was fire and blazed up, so that they had no need of plumes. In lieu of sails, the wind struck the forest, which was dense on each of the islands, filled this and carried the island wherever the helmsman would. There were boatswains in command, to keep the oarsmen in time, and the islands moved swiftly under the rowing, like war-galleys.

#### 1.41

At first we only saw two or three, but later on about six hundred made their appearance. Taking sides, they went to war and had a sea-fight. Many collided with one another bows on, and many were rammed amidships and sunk. Some, grappling one another, put up a stout fight and were slow to cast off, for those stationed at the bows showed all zeal in boarding and slaying: no quarter was given. Instead of

*vocabulary*

ἄγέλη herd ~demagogue  
 ἄμαξοπληθής wagon-filling  
 ἀναιρέω take up ~heresy  
 δελφίς -νος (m) dolphin  
 ἐκδέω attach, hang on  
 ἐπιβοάω call to for help  
 ἐπικαλέω call upon  
 ἐπικρατέω rule over  
 ἐπιρριπτέω throw on  
 ἐσπέρα evening, west  
 ζωγρέω capture, give quarter; revive  
 ~zoo  
 καταδύω enter, sink  
 κρούω hit, clap, knock

λεία booty  
 λείος smooth  
 μέχρι as far as, until  
 ναυάγιον (ἄ) wreckage  
 ὄστρεον -οῦ oyster  
 περιπλέκω embrace ~complex  
 πλεθριαῖος 30 m in size ~plethora  
 πολύπους octopus, cuttlefish ~pedal  
 πρύμνα stern  
 σιδήρεος of iron ~siderite  
 σιδηρεύς -ος (m) smith  
 σπόγγος sponge ~sponge  
 τιτρώσκω wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
 ὕλη (ῥ) forest, firewood

ἐξώγρει δὲ οὐδεῖς. ἀντὶ δὲ χειρῶν σιδηρῶν πολύποδας  
 μεγάλους ἐκδεδεμένους ἀλλήλοις ἐπερρίπτουν, οἱ δὲ  
 περιπλεκόμενοι τῇ ὕλῃ κατεῖχον τὴν νῆσον. ἔβαλλον  
 μέντοι καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον ὀστρέοις τε ἀμαξοπληθέσι καὶ  
 σπόγγοις πλεθριαίοις.

Ἦγεῖτο δὲ τῶν μὲν Αἰολοκένταυρος, τῶν δὲ  
 Θαλασσοπότης· καὶ μάχῃ αὐτοῖς ἐγγένητο, ὥς ἐδόκει,  
 λείας ἔνεκα· ἐλέγετο γὰρ ὁ Θαλασσοπότης πολλὰς  
 ἀγέλας δελφίνων τοῦ Αἰολοκενταύρου ἐληλακέναι, ὥς  
 ἦν ἀκούειν ἐπικαλούντων ἀλλήλοις καὶ τὰ ὀνόματα τῶν  
 βασιλέων ἐπιβοωμένων.

Τέλος δὲ νικῶσιν οἱ τοῦ Αἰολοκενταύρου καὶ νήσους  
 τῶν πολεμίων καταδύουσιν ἀμφὶ τὰς πεντήκοντα καὶ  
 ἑκατόν· καὶ ἄλλας τρεῖς λαμβάνουσιν αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν·  
 αἱ δὲ λοιπαὶ πρύμναν κρουσάμεναι ἔφευγον. οἱ δὲ μέχρι  
 τινὸς διώξαντες, ἐπειδὴ ἑσπέρα ἦν, τραπόμενοι πρὸς  
 τὰ ναύαγια τῶν πλείστων ἐπεκράτησαν καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν  
 ἀνείλοντο· καὶ γὰρ ἐκείνων κατέδυσαν νῆσοι οὐκ

|capture δὲ οὐδεῖς. ἀντὶ δὲ χειρῶν σιδηρῶν |octopus,  
 |cuttlefish  
 μεγάλους |attach, hang on ἀλλήλοις |throw on , οἱ δὲ  
 |embrace τῇ |forest, ... εἶχον τὴν νῆσον. ἔβαλλον  
 |firewood  
 μέντοι καὶ |wound, bring|oyster τε |wagon-filling καὶ  
 |to grief  
 |sponge |30 m in size .

Ἦγείτο δὲ τῶν μὲν Αἰολοκένταυρος, τῶν δὲ  
 Θαλασσοπότης· καὶ μάχη αὐτοῖς ἐγεγένητο, ὥς ἐδόκει,  
 λείας ἔνεκα· ἐλέγετο γὰρ ὁ Θαλασσοπότης πολλὰς  
 |herd |dolphin τοῦ Αἰολοκενταύρου ἐηλακέναι, ὥς  
 ἦν ἀκούειν |call upon ἀλλήλοις καὶ τὰ ὀνόματα τῶν  
 βασιλέων |call to for help .

Τέλος δὲ νικῶσιν οἱ τοῦ Αἰολοκενταύρου καὶ νήσους  
 τῶν πολεμίων |enter, sink ἀμφὶ τὰς |fifty καὶ  
 ἑκατόν· καὶ ἄλλας τρεῖς λαμβάνουσιν αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν·  
 αἱ δὲ λοιπαὶ |stern |hit, clap, knock ᾗφευγον. οἱ δὲ |as far as, until  
 τινὸς διώξαντες, ἐπειδὴ ἐσπέρα ἦν, τραπόμενοι πρὸς  
 τὰ |wreckage τῶν πλείστων |rule over καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν  
 |take up καὶ γὰρ ἐκείνων |enter, sink νῆσοι οὐκ

iron grapnels they threw aboard one another great devilfish with lines belayed to them, and these gripped the woods and held the island fast. They struck and wounded one another with oysters that would fill a wagon and with hundred-foot sponges.

The leader of one side was Aeolocentaur, of the other, Brinedrinker. Their battle evidently came about on account of an act of piracy: Brinedrinker was said to have driven off many herds of dolphins belonging to Aeolocentaur. We knew this because we could hear them abusing one another and calling out the names of their kings.

Finally the side of Aeolocentaur won; they sank about a hundred and fifty of the enemy's islands; and took three more, crews and all; the rest backed water and fled. After pursuing them some distance, they turned back to the wrecks at evening, making prizes of most of them and picking up what belonged to themselves; for on their own side not less

*vocabulary*

ἄγκυρα (ῥ) anchor

ᾄδω sing

ἀείδω sing

ἀνασταυρόω impale

ἀνύω accomplish, pass over, complete

ἀπόγειος from land; far from earth

ἀποδιδράσκω escape

ἀποπλέω sail away ~float

αὐλίζομαι live, lodge at

ἄχθομαι be burdened with

δαίιτα way of life; home; arbitration

διακόπτω cut through, interrupt

διορύσσω dig through; undermine

ἐλαχὺς small; comp.: less ~light

ἐξάπτω fasten to ~haptic

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

θάπτω bury ~epitaph

θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

καρτερός strong, staunch

κῆτος -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean

μηκέτι no more

μηχανή machine; mechanism, way

μονή staying, delaying

νησομαχία island-fight

ὀγδοήκοντα eighty ~octopus

οἰκεῖος household, familiar, proper

οἰκειόω adopt, adapt

ὀρμίζω anchor, beach

ὄρυγμα -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel

παιάν -ήνοος (m, 3) paeon

πλησίος near, neighboring

προέρχομαι proceed, come out

στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)

στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;

(pl noun) 200 meters

τοιχος wall of a house

τρόπαιον victory monument

ύάλινος of glass

ύστεραίος the next; later

ἐλάττους τῶν ὀγδοήκοντα. ἔστησαν δὲ καὶ τρόπαιον τῆς νησομαχίας ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τοῦ κήτους μίαν τῶν πολεμίων νῆσον ἀνασταυρώσαντες. ἐκείνην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα περὶ τὸ θηρίον ἠυλίσαντο ἐξάψαντες αὐτοῦ τὰ ἀπόγεια καὶ ἐπ' ἀγκυρῶν πλησίον ὀρμισάμενοι· καὶ γὰρ ἀγκύραις ἐχρῶντο μέγαις ὑαλίαις καρτεραῖς. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ θύσαντες ἐπὶ τοῦ κήτους καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους θάψαντες ἐπ' αὐτοῦ ἀπέπλεον ἠδόμενοι καὶ ὥσπερ παιᾶνας ἄδοντες. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὴν νησομαχίαν γενόμενα.

## 2

### 2.1

Τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου μηκέτι φέρων ἐγὼ τὴν ἐν τῷ κήτει δίαιταν ἀχθόμενός τε τῇ μονῇ μηχανὴν τινα ἐζήτουν, δι' ἧς ἂν ἐξελθεῖν γένοιτο· καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἔδοξεν ἡμῖν διορύξασι κατὰ τὸν δεξιὸν τοίχον ἀποδρᾶναι, καὶ ἀρξάμενοι διεκόπτομεν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ προελθόντες ὅσον πέντε σταδίου οὐδὲν ἠγνόμεν, τοῦ μὲν ὀρύγματος



ἐλάττους τῶν |eighty . ἔστησαν δὲ καὶ |victory ῥῆς  
 |monument  
 |island-fight ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τοῦ |whale μίαν τῶν πολεμίων  
 νῆσον |impale . ἐκείνην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα  
 περὶ τὸ θηρίον |live, lodge |fasten to αὐτοῦ τὰ |from land; far  
 |at |from earth  
 καὶ ἐπ' |anchor πλησίον |anchor, beach καὶ γὰρ |anchor  
 ἐχρῶντο μεγάλαις |of glass |strong, τῇ |the next; later  
 |staunch  
 θύσαντες ἐπὶ τοῦ |whale καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους θάψαντες ἐπ'  
 αὐτοῦ ἀπέπλεον |ἥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy; or νας ἄδοντες.  
 |ἥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy  
 ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὴν |island-fight γενόμενα.

## 2

### 2.1

Τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου |no more βέρων ἐγὼ τὴν ἐν τῷ |whale  
 |way off|be burdened with . ἦ |staying|machine; mecha- ἐζήτουν,  
 |life; |delaying|gism, way  
 |home; ἂν ἐξελθεῖν γένοιτο· καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἔδοξεν  
 |arbitra-  
 |tion  
 ἡμῖν |dig through; ἀτὰ τὸν δεξιὸν |wall of a|escape , καὶ  
 |undermine |house  
 ἀρξάμενοι |cut through, ἐπειδὴ δὲ |proceed, come οὗτ' . ὅ πέντε  
 |interrupt  
 σταδίους οὐδὲν |accomplish οὐ μὲν |trench,  
 |tunnel

than eighty islands had gone down. They also made a trophy of the isle-fight by setting up one of the enemy's islands on the head of the whale. That night they slept on shipboard around the animal, making their shore lines fast to him and riding at anchor just off him; for they had anchors, large and strong, made of glass. On the following day they performed sacrifice on the whale, buried their friends on him, and sailed off rejoicing and apparently singing hymns of victory. So much for the events of the isle-fight.

## 2

### 2.1

From that time on, as I could no longer endure the life in the whale and was discontented with the delay, I sought a way of escape. First we determined to dig through the right side and make off, and we made a beginning and tried to cut through. But when we had advanced some five furlongs without getting anywhere, we left off digging and decided



οὕτω δὴ μεγάλους δοκοὺς τὸ στόμα διερείσαντες τὴν ναῦν (p. 172)

*vocabulary*

ἀεργός lazy ~ergonomics  
 ἀναίσθητος unfeeling, stupid  
 ἀναχάσκω gape  
 ἀνέλκω draw up, back  
 ἀπονεκρόω destroy  
 ἀραιώμα -τος (n, 3) crack, interstice  
 ἀργός glistening, swift  
 γομφίος molar  
 γοῦν at least then  
 δέκατος tenth ~decimal  
 διαγιγνώσκω discern, decide ~gnostic  
 διάγω lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
 διερείδω prop up  
 δυσώδης smelly  
 δωδέκατος twelfth ~dodecahedron  
 ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
 ἕνατος ninth  
 ἐνδέκατος eleventh ~decimal  
 ἐνιμι be in ~ion  
 ἐννοέω consider  
 ἔξοδος (f) leaving, way out  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion

ἐπισκευάζω get ready; repair  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 καίω burn ~caustic  
 κατακλείω enclose; shut up  
 καῦμα -τος (n, 3) heat ~caustic  
 κῆτος -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean  
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
 κυβερνάω steer ~govern  
 μηκέτι no more  
 μόλις with difficulty, barely  
 νοσέω be sick, be mad, suffer  
 ὀγδοος eighth ~octopus  
 οὐραῖος of the tail  
 πότε when?  
 συγχλείω hem in, connect, conclude  
 συμμύω close a hole  
 συνίημι send together; hear, notice,  
 understand ~jet  
 τέλεος finished  
 ὕλη (ῥ) forest, firewood  
 ὕλεις (ῥ) wooded  
 ὑποστηρίζω prop up, sustain  
 χάσκω gape

ἐπανσάμεθα, τὴν δὲ ὕλην καῦσαι διέγνωμεν· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν τὸ κῆτος ἀποθανεῖν· εἰ δὲ τοῦτο γένοιτο, ῥαδία ἔμελλεν ἡμῖν ἔσεσθαι ἡ ἔξοδος. ἀρξάμενοι οὖν ἀπὸ τῶν οὐραίων ἐκαίομεν, καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν ἑπτὰ καὶ ἴσας νύκτας ἀναισθήτως εἶχε τοῦ καύματος, ὀγδόῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνάτῃ συνίεμεν αὐτοῦ νοσοῦντος· ἀργότερον γοῦν ἀνέχασκεν καὶ εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι ταχὺ συνέμυνεν. δεκάτῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνδεκάτῃ τέλεον ἀπενεκροῦτο καὶ δυσῶδες ἦν· τῇ δωδεκάτῃ δὲ μόλις ἐνενοήσαμεν ὥς, εἰ μή τις χανόντος αὐτοῦ ὑποστηρίξειεν τοὺς γομφίους, ὥστε μηκέτι συγκλείσαι, κινδυνεύσομεν κατακλεισθέντες ἐν νεκρῷ αὐτῷ ἀπολέσθαι. οὕτω δὲ μεγάλοις δοκοῖς τὸ στόμα διερείσαντες τὴν ναῦν ἐπεσκευάζομεν ὕδωρ τε ὥς ἐνι πλείστον ἐμβαλλόμενοι καὶ τᾶλλα ἐπιτήδεια· κυβερνήσειν δὲ ἔμελλεν ὁ Σκίνθαρος.

## 2.2

Τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ τὸ μὲν ἤδη τεθνήκει, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἀνελκύσαντες τὸ πλοῖον καὶ διὰ τῶν ἀραιωμάτων διαγαγόντες καὶ

ἐπανσάμεθα, τὴν δὲ ὕλην καῦσαι |discern, οὕτω  
 |decide  
 γὰρ ἂν τὸ |whale ἀποθανεῖν· εἰ δὲ τοῦτο γένοιτο,  
 ῥαδία ἔμελλεν ἡμῖν ἔσεσθαι ἢ |leaving, way' οὗτ' ἔμενοι οὖν  
 ἀπὸ τῶν |of the tail ἐκαίμεν, καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν ἑπτὰ καὶ  
 ἵσας νύκτας |unfeeling, εἶχε τοῦ |heat , |eighth δὲ  
 |stupid  
 καὶ |ninth συνίμεν αὐτοῦ |be sick, be ἀργότερον |at least then  
 |mad, suffer  
 |gape καὶ εἴ ποτε |gape ταχὺ συνέμμεν. δεκάτη  
 δὲ καὶ |eleventh τέλεον |destroy καὶ |smelly ἦν·  
 τῇ |twelfth δὲ |with dif-|consider ὥς, εἰ μὴ τις  
 |faculty,  
 |gape αὐτοῦ |barely |prop up, sustain τοὺς |molar , ὥστε  
 μηκέτι |συγκλείω?: hem in, connect, con-|enclose; shut up ἐν  
 |clude; or συγκλείω?: hem in, con-  
 νεκρῶ αὐτῶ ἀποκείσθαι. οὕτω δὲ μεγάλους δοκοῖς τὸ  
 |nect, conclude  
 στόμα |prop up τὴν ναῦν |get ready; repair ὕδωρ τε  
 ὥς |be in |λείστον ἐμβαλλόμενοι καὶ τὰλλα ἐπιτήδεια·  
 |steer δὲ ἔμελλεν ὁ Σκίνθαρος.

## 2.2

Τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ τὸ μὲν ἤδη τεθνήκει, ἡμεῖς δὲ |draw up, back  
 τὸ πλοῖον καὶ διὰ τῶν |crack, interstice |lead through; καὶ  
 |pass a time

to set the forest afire, thinking that in this way the whale could be killed, and in that case our escape would be easy. So we began at the tail end and set it afire. For seven days and seven nights he was unaffected by the burning, but on the eighth and ninth we gathered that he was in a bad way. For instance, he yawned less frequently, and whenever he did yawn he closed his mouth quickly. On the tenth and eleventh day mortification at last set in and he was noisome. On the twelfth we perceived just in time that if someone did not shore his jaws open when he yawned, so that he could not close them again, we stood a chance of being shut up in the dead whale and dying there ourselves. At the last moment, then, we propped the mouth open with great beams and made our boat ready, putting aboard all the water we could and the other provisions. Our sailing-master was to be Scintharus.

## 2.2

On the next day the whale was dead at last. We dragged the boat up, took her through the gaps, made

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἄέρος (ᾱ, m) mist, air ~air  
**ἀνακαίω** light (a fire) ~caustic  
**ἀνορύσσω** dig out  
**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare  
**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**διαθέω** run around  
**ἐξάπτω** fasten to ~haptic  
**ἐπαμβαίνω** mount; rise  
**ἐπαναβαίνω** mount; rise  
**ἐπαυλίζομαι** camp on, near  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse  
**ἐπιμένω** wait, stay ~remain  
**ἐπινοέω** intend  
**ἐπιπολή** (gen) on top of  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὐκρατος** (ᾱ) moderate, temperate  
**ἡρέμα** quietly, gently, slowly  
**θύω** (ῑ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**ἰχθύς** -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology

**καθίημι** (ῑ) speed down upon; take down ~jet  
**καταμετρέω** measure out  
**κρύσταλλος** ice ~crystal  
**ναυμαχία** naval warfare  
**νηνέμιος** still, windless ~anemometer  
**νώτον** back of the body; rear of an army; top of a box  
**ὀδούς** -ντος (m) tooth  
**ὄργυια** fathom, arm's length ~reach  
**ὄργυιά** fathom, arm's length  
**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
 ~pelagic  
**πήγνυμι** (ῑ) stick, set, build ~fang  
**πνέω** breathe, blow ~apnea  
**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out  
**προσοκέλλω** run aground  
**σιτέομαι** (ῑ) eat ~parasite  
**σκάπτω** dig  
**σπήλαιον** grotto, cavern  
**σφοδρός** vehement  
**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three  
**τρόπαιον** victory monument

ἐκ τῶν ὀδόντων ἐξάψαντες ἡρέμα καθήκαμεν ἐς τὴν θάλατταν· ἐπαναβάντες δὲ ἐπὶ τὰ νῶτα καὶ θύσαντες τῷ Ποσειδῶνι αὐτοῦ παρὰ τὸ τρόπαιον ἡμέρας τε τρεῖς ἐπαυλισάμενοι— νηνεμία γὰρ ἦν— τῇ τετάρτῃ ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. ἔνθα δὴ πολλοῖς τῶν ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας νεκροῖς ἀπηντῶμεν καὶ προσωκέλλομεν, καὶ τὰ σώματα καταμετροῦντες ἐθαυμάζομεν. καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν τινας ἐπλέομεν εὐκράτῳ ἀέρι χρώμενοι, ἔπειτα βορέου σφοδροῦ πνεύσαντος μέγα κρύος ἐγένετο, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πᾶν ἐπάγη τὸ πέλαγος, οὐκ ἐπιπολῆς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐς βάθος ὅσον ἐπὶ τριακοσίας ὀργυιάς, ὥστε καὶ ἀποβάντας διαθεῖν ἐπὶ τοῦ κρυστάλλου. ἐπιμένοντος δὲ τοῦ πνεύματος φέρειν οὐ δυνάμενοι τοιόνδε τι ἐπενοήσαμεν— ὁ δὲ τὴν γνώμην ἀποφηνάμενος ἦν ὁ Σκίνθαρος— σκάψαντες γὰρ ἐν τῷ ὕδατι σπήλαιον μέγιστον ἐν τούτῳ ἐμείναμεν ἡμέρας τριάκοντα, πῦρ ἀνακαίοντες καὶ σιτούμενοι τοὺς ἰχθύς· εὐρίσκομεν δὲ αὐτοὺς ἀνορύττοντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤδη ἐπέλειπε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, προελθόντες καὶ τὴν ναῦν



ἐκ τῶν |tooth |fasten to |quietly, |speed down upon; τὴν  
 gently, |take down  
 θάλατταν· ἐπαναβάντες δὲ ἐπὶ τὰ |slowly |back καὶ θύσαντες  
 τῷ Ποσειδῶνι αὐτοῦ παρὰ τὸ |victory |ἡμέρας τε  
 monument  
 τρεῖς |camp on, near — |still, γὰρ ἦν— τῇ τετάρτῃ  
 |windless  
 ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. ἔνθα δὴ πολλοῖς τῶν ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας  
 νεκροῖς |encounter, comē|run aground , καὶ τὰ σώματα  
 |upon  
 |measure out ἐθαυμάζομεν. καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν τινας  
 ἐπλέομεν |moderate, ἄερί χρώμενοι, ἔπειτα |north, |vehement  
 temperate |north  
 |breathe, blow , μέγα κρύος ἐγένετο, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πᾶν |wind |stick, set, build  
 τὸ |the open sea ἔκ |(gen) on top of οὐ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐς |depth, ὅσον  
 |height  
 ἐπὶ τριακοσίας ὀργυιάς, ὥστε καὶ ἀποβάντας |run around·  
 τοῦ |ice |wait, stay δὲ τοῦ πνεύματος φέρειν  
 οὐ δυνάμενοι τοιόνδε τι |intend — ὁ δὲ τὴν γνώμην  
 |display, declare ἦν ὁ Σκίνθαρος— |dig γὰρ ἐν τῷ  
 ὕδατι |grotto, μέγιστον ἐν τούτῳ ἐμείναμεν ἡμέρας  
 |cavern  
 τριάκοντα, πῦρ |light (a fire) καὶ σιτούμενοι τοὺς ἰχθῦς·  
 εὐρίσκομεν δὲ αὐτοὺς |dig out . ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤδη |fail, not work  
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, |proceed, come out· τὴν ναῦν

her fast to the teeth and lowered her slowly into the sea. Climbing on the back and sacrificing to Poseidon there by the trophy, we camped for three days, as it was calm. On the fourth day we sailed off, and in so doing met and grounded on many of the dead from the sea-fight, and measured their bodies with amazement. For some days we sailed with a moderate breeze, and then a strong norther blew up and brought on great cold. The entire sea was frozen by it, not just on the surface but to a depth of fully six fathoms, so that we could leave the boat and run on the ice. The wind held and we could not stand it, so we devised an odd remedy—the proposer of the idea was Scintharus. We dug a very large cave in the water and stopped in it for thirty days, keeping a fire burning and eating the fish that we found in digging. When our provisions at last failed, we came out, hauled up the boat, which had frozen in,

*vocabulary*

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture  
 ἄδῶ (ἄ) have too much of ~hedonism  
 ἀλέα ἀλῆς an escape; warmth of the sun ~swelter  
 ἄμπελος (f) vine  
 ἀνασπάω draw again ~spatula  
 ἀποπλέω sail away ~float  
 βότρυς cluster of grapes  
 γάλα milk ~galaxy  
 διολισθάνω slip through  
 ἐμβαίνω step on, board ~basis  
 ἐνεσθίω eat hastily  
 ἐπιλείπω fail, not work ~eclipse  
 ἐρήμιος empty  
 κατατοξεύω shoot dead  
 κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit ~ceratopsia  
 λεῖος smooth  
 λευκός white ~light  
 ὀθόνη linen

πάγος frost; crag ~fang  
 πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea ~pelagic  
 πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon  
 περίμετρος very long ~metric  
 πετάννυμι (ὄ) spread, spread out  
 πήγνυμι (ὄ) stick, set, build ~fang  
 πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of ~plethora  
 προσφέρω present; resemble; add  
 σταδίη (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 συμπήγνυμι (ὄ) curdle ~fang  
 σύρω (ὄ) drag  
 ταῦρος bull ~steer  
 τριακόσιοι three hundred ~three  
 τυρός (ὄ) cheese

πεπηγυῖαν ἀνασπάσαντες καὶ πετάσαντες τὴν ὀθόνην  
 ἐσυρόμεθα ὥσπερ πλέοντες λείως καὶ προσηγνῶς ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 πάγους διολισθάνοντες. ἡμέρα δὲ πέμπτη ἀλέα τε ἦν ἤδη  
 καὶ ὁ πάγος ἐλύετο καὶ ὕδωρ πάντα αὐθις ἐγίνετο.

### 2.3

Πλεύσαντες οὖν ὅσον τριακοσίους<sup>1</sup> νήσω μικρᾷ καὶ ἐρήμῃ  
 προσηνέχθημεν, ἀφ' ἧς ὕδωρ λαβόντες— ἐπελελοίπει  
 γὰρ ἤδηκαὶ— δύο ταύρους ἀγρίους κατατοξεύσαντες  
 ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. οἱ δὲ ταῦροι οὗτοι τὰ κέρατα οὐκ ἐπὶ τῆς  
 κεφαλῆς εἶχον, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς, ὥσπερ ὁ Μῶμος  
 ἡξίου.

Μετ' οὐ πολὺ δὲ εἰς πέλαγος ἐνεβαίνομεν, οὐχ ὕδατος,  
 ἀλλὰ γάλακτος· καὶ νῆσος ἐν αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο λευκὴ  
 πλήρης ἀμπέλων. ἦν δὲ ἡ νῆσος τυρὸς μέγιστος  
 συμπεπηγώς, ὡς ὕστερον ἐμφαγόντες ἐμάθομεν, σταδίων  
 εἴκοσι πέντε τὸ περίμετρον· αἱ δὲ ἄμπελοι βοτρύων  
 πλήρεις, οὐ μέντοι οἶνον, ἀλλὰ γάλα ἐξ αὐτῶν

<sup>1</sup> of some unit of distance

|stick, set,|draw again *καὶ* |spread, *τὴν* |linen  
|build |spread out  
|drag *ὥσπερ πλέοντες* |smooth. *καὶ προσηνῶς ἐπὶ τοῦ*  
*πάγου* |slip through . *ἡμέρα δὲ* |fifth |an escape; *ῥῆμα*  
|of the sun  
*καὶ ὁ* |frost; crag *ἦτο καὶ ὕδωρ πάντα αὐθις ἐγίνετο.*

## 2.3

Πλεύσαντες οὖν ὅσον |three hundred<sup>1</sup> *νήσω μικρᾷ καὶ* |empty  
*προσηνέχθημεν, ἀφ' ἧς ὕδωρ λαβόντες—* |fail, not work  
*γὰρ* |have too much of |bull |wild, |shoot dead  
|savage  
*ἔφυγον* . *οἱ δὲ ταῦροι οὗτοι τὰ κέρατα οὐκ ἐπὶ τῆς*  
*κεφαλῆς εἶχον, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς, ὥσπερ ὁ Μῶμος*  
*ἤξιον.*

Μετ' οὐ πολὺ δὲ εἰς |the open|step on, board, *οὐχ ὕδατος,*  
|sea  
*ἀλλὰ* |milk *καὶ νῆσος ἐν αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο λευκὴ*  
|full, |vine . *ἦν δὲ ἡ νῆσος* |cheese *μέγιστος*  
|complete; *ἡ*  
|(+gen) full *ἡ*  
|girdle , *ὥς ὕστερον ἐμφαγόντες ἐμάθομεν, σταδίων*  
*εἴκοσι πέντε τὸ περίμετρον· αἱ δὲ* |vine *βοτρυώνων*  
|full, complete; *ἔντοι οἶνον, ἀλλὰ* |milk *ἐξ αὐτῶν*  
|(+gen) full of

<sup>1</sup> of some unit of distance

spread our canvas and slid, gliding on the ice smoothly and easily, just as if we were sailing. On the fifth day it was warm again, the ice broke up and everything turned to water once more.

### 2.3

After sailing about three hundred furlongs we ran in at a small desert island, where we got water — which had failed by this time — and shot two wild bulls, and then sailed away. These bulls did not have their horns on their head but under their eyes, as Momus wanted.

Not long afterwards we entered a sea of milk, not of water, and in it a white island, full of grapevines, came in sight. The island was a great solid cheese, as we afterwards learned by tasting it. It was twenty-five furlongs in circumference. The vines were full of grapes, but the liquid which we squeezed from them and drank was milk instead of wine. A

*vocabulary*

**άλμυρός** salty  
**ἀνοικοδομέω** build up, rebuild  
**ἀπαλλαγή** relief, escape  
**ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**ἀποθλίβω** (ι) squeeze out; oppress  
**αὔρα** breeze ~air  
**βαπτίζω** dip, plunge  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βότρυς** cluster of grapes  
**γάλα** milk ~galaxy  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**διαθέω** run around  
**ἕκτος** sixth ~hexagon  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξορμάω** veer off course ~hormone  
**ἐπίγραμμα** -τος (n, 3) inscription, title,

maker's signature  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**κυάνεος** dark ~cyan  
**κύμα** -τος (n, 3) wave; embryo  
 ~accumulate  
**λειοκύμων** (ῥ) having low waves  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**ὄγδοος** eighth ~octopus  
**παραπέμπω** send via; escort ~pomp  
**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
 ~pelagic  
**ποτός** potable  
**προσέοικα** resemble  
**σιτίον** (ι) grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**ὑπερέχω** be over; protect  
**φέλλινος** of cork  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἀποθλίβοντες ἐπίνομεν. ἱερὸν δὲ ἐν μέσῃ τῇ νήσῳ ἀνωκοδόμητο Γαλατείας τῆς Νηρηίδος, ὡς ἐδήλου τὸ ἐπίγραμμα. ὅσον οὖν χρόνον ἐκεῖ ἐμείναμεν, ὄψον μὲν ἡμῖν καὶ σιτίον ἢ γῆ ὑπῆρχεν, ποτὸν δὲ τὸ γάλα τὸ ἐκ τῶν βοτρυῶν. βασιλεύειν δὲ τῶν χωρίων τούτων ἐλέγετο Τυρῶ ἢ Σαλμωνέως, μετὰ τὴν ἐντεῦθεν ἀπαλλαγὴν ταύτην παρὰ τοῦ Ποσειδῶνος λαβοῦσα τὴν τιμὴν.

#### 2.4-10

Μείναντες δὲ ἡμέρας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ πέντε, τῇ ἕκτῃ ἐξωρμήσαμεν, αὔρας μὲν τινος παραπεμπούσης, λειοκύμονος δὲ οὔσης τῆς θαλάττης· ὀγδόῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ πλέοντες οὐκέτι διὰ τοῦ γάλακτος, ἀλλ' ἤδη ἐν ἀλμυρῷ καὶ κυανέῳ ὕδατι, καθορῶμεν ἀνθρώπους πολλοὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ πελάγους διαθέοντας, ἅπαντα ἡμῖν προσεοικότας, καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ μεγέθη, πλὴν τῶν ποδῶν μόνων· ταῦτα γὰρ φέλλινα εἶχον, ἀφ' οὗ δὴ, οἶμαι, καὶ ἐκαλοῦντο Φελλόποδες. ἐθαυμάσαμεν οὖν ἰδόντες οὐ βαπτιζομένους, ἀλλὰ ὑπερέχοντας τῶν κυμάτων



|squeeze out; oppress' ομεν. ἱερὸν δὲ ἐν μέσῃ τῇ νήσῳ  
 |build up, rebuild Ξαλατείας τῆς Νηρηΐδος, ὥς |show, τὸ  
 |disclose  
 |inscription, . title, οὖν οὖν χρόνον ἐκεῖ ἐμείναμεν, ὅψον μὲν  
 |maker's signature  
 ἡμῖν καὶ |grain, ἡ γῇ ὑπῆρχεν, |potable δὲ τὸ |milk τὸ ἐκ  
 |bread,  
 τῶν βοτρυῶν. |be king δὲ τῶν |area; downwards ἐλέγετο  
 Τυρῶ ἡ Σαλμωνέως, μετὰ τὴν |thence ἀπαλλαγὴν  
 ταύτην παρὰ τοῦ Ποσειδῶνος λαβοῦσα τὴν τιμὴν.

## 2.4-10

Μείναντες δὲ ἡμέρας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ πέντε, τῇ ἑκτῇ  
 ἐξωρμήσαμεν, αὔρας μὲν τινος |send via; escort ,  
 |having low waves οὔσης τῆς θαλάττης· |eighth δὲ ἡμέρα  
 πλέοντες οὐκέτι διὰ τοῦ |milk , ἀλλ' ἤδη ἐν |salty  
 καὶ |dark ὕδατι, |look down ἀνθρώπους πολλοὺς ἐπὶ  
 τοῦ |the open sea|run around , ἅπαντα ἡμῖν |resemble ,  
 καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ |tall, big , πλὴν τῶν ποδῶν μόνων·  
 ταῦτα γὰρ |of cork εἶχον, ἀφ' οὗ δὴ, οἶμαι, καὶ ἐκαλοῦντο  
 Φελλόποδες. ἐθανμάσαμεν οὖν ἰδόντες οὐ |dip, plunge ,  
 ἀλλὰ |be over; protect ὧν |wave;  
 |embryo

temple had been constructed in the middle of the island in honour of Galatea the Nereid, as its inscription indicated. All the time that we stopped in the island the earth was our bread and meat and the milk from the grapes our drink. The ruler of that region was said to be Tyro, daughter of Salmoneus, who after departure from home received this guerdon from Poseidon.

#### 2.4-10

After stopping five days on the island we started out on the sixth, with a bit of breeze propelling us over a rippling sea. On the eighth day, by which time we were no longer sailing through the milk but in briny blue water, we came in sight of many men running over the sea, like us in every way, both in shape and in size, except only their feet, which were of cork: that is why they were called Corkfeet, if I am not mistaken. We were amazed to see that they did not go under, but stayed on the top of the

*vocabulary*

ἀδεής (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos  
 ἀμπελάνθη bloom; vine  
 ἀνακαίω light (a fire) ~caustic  
 ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at  
 some distance  
 ἀπόζω smell of  
 ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy  
 ἀριστερός left-hand  
 ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute  
 αὔρα breeze ~air  
 βαδίζω walk, proceed  
 δάφνη laurel  
 εἴτα then, therefore, next  
 ἐλαχύς small; comp.: less ~light  
 ἐπείγω weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry  
 ἐπεύχομαι exult (over); pray ~vow  
 εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius  
 εὐπλοία a good voyage ~float  
 εὐώδης fragrant  
 ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
 θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable  
 ἴον violet (flower)  
 μέχρι as far as, until  
 μυρρίνη myrtle  
 μύρρινος myrtle  
 μύρσινος myrtle

νάρκισσος daffodil  
 ὀδοιπορέω walk over  
 παραθέω run beside  
 πεντακόσιοι 500  
 περιπνέω breathe around  
 πλατύς extensive, wide  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 προσβάλλω hit, attack, approach;  
 attach, offer ~ballistic  
 πρόσσειμι approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
 πρόσωθεν forward, in the future; far  
 πρῶρα bow, prow ~prolog  
 ῥόδον rose  
 σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στρογγύλος round; merchant ship  
 συγγραφεύς -ως (m) historian  
 συνοδοιπορέω travel together  
 ταπεινός low  
 ὑάκινθος types of blue flower  
 ~hyacinth  
 ὑψηλός high  
 φελλός cork tree

καὶ ἀδεῶς ὁδοιποροῦντας. οἱ δὲ καὶ προσήεσαν καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ἡμᾶς Ἑλληνικῇ φωνῇ· ἔλεγον δὲ εἰς Φελλῶ τὴν αὐτῶν πατρίδα ἐπείγεσθαι. μέχρι μὲν οὖν τινος συνωδοιπόρουν ἡμῖν παραθέοντες, εἴτα ἀποτραπόμενοι τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐβάδιζον εὐπλοῖαν ἡμῖν ἐπευξάμενοι.

Μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ πολλαὶ νῆσοι ἐφαίνοντο, πλησίον μὲν ἐξ ἀριστερῶν ἢ Φελλῶ, ἐς ἣν ἐκεῖνοι ἔσπευδον, πόλις ἐπὶ μεγάλου καὶ στρογγύλου φελλοῦ κατοικουμένη· πόρρωθεν δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἐν δεξιᾷ πέντε μέγισται καὶ ὑψηλόταται, καὶ πῦρ πολὺ ἀπ' αὐτῶν ἀνεκαίετο, κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρῶραν μία πλατεῖα καὶ ταπεινὴ, σταδίους ἀπέχουσα οὐκ ἐλάττους πεντακοσίων.

Ἦδη δὲ πλησίον ἦμεν, καὶ θαυμαστή τις αὔρα περιέπνευσεν ἡμᾶς, ἡδεῖα καὶ εὐώδης, οἷαν φησὶν ὁ συγγραφεὺς Ἡρόδοτος ἀπόζειν τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας. οἶον γὰρ ἀπὸ ρόδων καὶ ναρκίσσων καὶ ὑακίνθων καὶ κρίνων καὶ ἴων, ἔτι δὲ μυρρίνης καὶ δάφνης καὶ ἀμπελάνθης, τοιοῦτον ἡμῖν τὸ ἥδὺ προσέβαλλεν. ἡσθέντες

καὶ |fearless |walk over οἱ δὲ καὶ προσήεσαν καὶ  
 ἡσπάζοντο ἡμᾶς Ἑλληνικῇ φωνῇ· ἔλεγον δὲ εἰς |cork tree  
 τὴν αὐτῶν πατρίδα |weigh upon, drive; |run μὲν οὖν τινος  
 (mid) hurry  
 |travel together ἡμῖν |run beside , εἶτα |divert from  
 τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐβάδιζον |a good voyage |exult (over); pray

Μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ πολλαὶ νῆσοι ἐφαίνοντο, πλησίον μὲν ἐξ  
 |left-hand ἡ |cork tree ἐς ἣν ἐκεῖνοι ἔσπευδον, πόλις ἐπὶ  
 μεγάλου καὶ |round; |cork tree |στοικουμένη· πόρρωθεν  
 merchant  
 δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἐν δεξιᾷ πέντε μέγισται καὶ ὑψηλόταται, καὶ  
 ship  
 πῦρ πολὺ ἀπ' αὐτῶν |light (a fire) κατὰ δὲ τὴν |bow, prow, ἰα  
 |extensive, wide |low , σταδίους ἀπέχουσα οὐκ ἐλάττους  
 |500

Ἦδη δὲ πλησίον ἦμεν, καὶ θαυμαστή τις αὔρα  
 |breathe around ἡμᾶς, ἡδεῖα καὶ |fragrant οἶαν φησὶν ὁ  
 |historian Ἡρόδοτος |smell of τῆς |blessed with ἀραβίας.  
 good genius  
 οἶον γὰρ ἀπὸ |rose καὶ |daffodil καὶ |types of blue flower  
 καὶ κρίνων καὶ |violet (flower) μυρρίνης καὶ |laurel καὶ  
 |bloom; vine , τοιοῦτον ἡμῖν τὸ ἥδυν |hit, attack, approach; |ντες  
 attach, offer



*vocabulary*

ἄδω sing  
 ἀείδω sing  
 ἄήρ ἄέρος (ἄ, m) mist, air ~air  
 ἄθροος noiseless  
 ἄκλυστος sheltered, not flooded  
 ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
 ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
 ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail  
 ἀποσυρίζω (ῶ) whistle, showing  
 indifference  
 αὐλέω play (blow, toot)  
 αὐλή courtyard  
 αὐλημα flute music  
 αὐλῖς -τος (f) roost, bivouac  
 αὐλός flute, tube, hollow  
 αὐλών canyon, strait, canal  
 αὔρα breeze ~air  
 βοά din, a shout  
 βοεύς βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine  
 διασαλεύω shake; confuse  
 διαυγής translucent  
 ἐλπίζω (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act)  
 cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary  
 ἔνιοι some  
 ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet  
 ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise  
 ἐρημία wilderness, solitude  
 εὐανθής flowering, luxuriant  
 εὕπνοος breathing freely; airy  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
 ἡλών beach  
 ἡρέμα quietly, gently, slowly  
 θορυβώδης uproarious, clamorous  
 καθοράω look down ~panorama

κατάγω lead down/home; land  
 ~demagogue  
 κηλέω bewitch  
 κιθάρα lyre  
 κινέω (ι) set in motion, move, remove  
 ~kinetic  
 κλάδος branch, shoot  
 κοῦφος light, nimble  
 κροτέω cause to rattle  
 λειμών -ος (m, 3) meadow ~limnic  
 λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge  
 ~limnic  
 μουσική art, music  
 μουσικός musical, aesthetic  
 ὀρμίζω anchor, beach  
 ὄρνειον bird ~ornithology  
 ὀσμὴ smell ~osmium, odor  
 περίπολος patrolling  
 περιχέω shed, spread  
 πλάγιος sideways; treacherous  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 πνέω breathe, blow ~apnea  
 πόνος toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
 πρόειμι to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
 σύμμιχτος commingled, promiscuous  
 συμπόσιον drinking party  
 συνεχής (ῶ) continuously  
 τερπνός pleasant  
 ὑλάω bark (a dog)  
 ὕλη (ῶ) forest, firewood  
 ὕληεις (ῶ) wooded  
 φρουρέω keep watch  
 φρουρός watcher, guard  
 χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

δὲ τῇ ὁσμῇ καὶ χρηστὰ ἐκ μακρῶν πόνων ἐλπίσαντες κατ' ὀλίγον ἤδη πλησίον τῆς νήσου ἐγινόμεθα. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ καθεωρῶμεν λιμένας τε πολλοὺς περὶ πᾶσαν ἀκλύστους καὶ μεγάλους, ποταμούς τε διανγείς ἐξιέντας ἡρέμα εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, ἔτι δὲ λειμῶνας καὶ ὕλας καὶ ὄρνεα μουσικά, τὰ μὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἡϊόνων ᾄδοντα, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν κλάδων· ἀήρ τε κοῦφος καὶ εὐπνους περιεκέχυτο τὴν χώραν· καὶ αὖραι δέ τινες ἡδέϊαι πνέουσai ἡρέμα τὴν ὕλην διεσάλευον, ὥστε καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν κλάδων κινουμένων τερπνὰ καὶ συνεχῇ μέλη ἀπεσυρίζετο, εὐοκίτα τοῖς ἐπ' ἐρημίας αὐλήμασι τῶν πλαγίων αὐλῶν. καὶ μὴν καὶ βοή σύμμικτος ἠκούετο ἄθρους, οὐ θορυβώδης, ἀλλ' οἷα γένοιτ' ἂν ἐν συμποσίῳ, τῶν μὲν αὐλούντων, τῶν δὲ ἐπαινούντων, ἐνίων δὲ κροτούντων πρὸς αὐλὸν ἢ κιθάραν.

Τούτοις ἅπασι κηλούμενοι κατήχθημεν, ὀρμίσαντες δὲ τὴν ναῦν ἀπεβαίνομεν, τὸν Σκίνθαρον ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ δύο τῶν ἐταίρων ἀπολιπόντες. προϊόντες δὲ διὰ λειμῶνος εὐανθοῦς ἐντυγχάνομεν τοῖς φρουροῖς καὶ περιπόλοις,



δὲ τῇ ὁσμῇ καὶ χρηστὰ ἐκ μακρῶν πόνων ἐλπίσαντες κατ'  
 ὀλίγον ἤδη πλησίον τῆς νήσου ἐγινόμεθα. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ  
 καθεωρῶμεν λιμένας τε πολλοὺς περὶ πᾶσαν |sheltered,  
 |not flooded  
 καὶ μεγάλους, ποταμούς τε |translu- |send |quietly, gen- ἵν  
 |cent |forth, |tly, slowly  
 θάλατταν, ἔτι δὲ |meadow καὶ ὕλας καὶ ὄρνεα μουσικά,  
 |allow  
 |forth  
 τὰ μὲ ἐπὶ τῶν |beach ἄδοντα, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν  
 |branch, ἀήρ τε |light, καὶ |breathing |shed, spread τῇν  
 |shoot |nimble |freely; airy  
 χώραν· καὶ αὖραι δέ τινες ἠδεΐαι πνέουσai |quietly, gen-  
 |tly, slowly  
 ὕλην |shake; , ὥστε καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν |branch, κινουμένων  
 |confuse |shoot  
 |pleasant καὶ συνεχῇ μέλῃ |whistle, show- |ζοικότα τοῖς ἐπ'  
 |ing indifference  
 |wilderness|flute music τῶν πλαγίων αὐλῶν. καὶ μὴν καὶ βοῇ  
 |solitude  
 |commingled, ,κούετο |noiseless ὡς |uproarious, , ἀλλ' οἷα γένοιτ'  
 |promiscuous |clamorous  
 ἂν ἐν |drinking , τῶν μὲν |play (blow, toot) |δὲ ἐπαινούντων,  
 |party  
 ἐνίων δὲ |cause to rattle πρὸς |flute, , |lyre  
 |tube,  
 |hollow  
 Τούτοις ἅπασι κηλούμενοι κατήχθημεν, ὀρμίσαντες δὲ  
 τὴν ναῦν ἀπεβαίνομεν, τὸν Σκίνθαρον ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ δύο  
 τῶν ἐταίρων ἀπολιπόντες. προϊόντες δὲ διὰ |meadow  
 |flowering, ἐντυγχάνομεν τοῖς φρουροῖς καὶ |patrolling  
 |luxuriant

in bloom. Delighted with the fragrance and cherishing high hopes after our long toils, we gradually drew near to the island at last. Then we saw many harbours all about it, large and unfretted by beating waves; transparent rivers emptying softly into the sea; meads, too, and woods and songbirds, some of them singing on the shore and many in the branches. A rare, pure atmosphere enfolded the place, and sweet breezes with their blowing stirred the woods gently, so that from the moving branches came a whisper of delightful, unbroken music, like the fluting of Pandean pipes in desert places. Moreover, a confused sound could be heard incessantly, which was not noisy but resembled that made at a drinking-party, when some are playing, others singing and others beating time to the flute or the lyre.

Enchanted with all this, we put in, anchored our boat and landed, leaving Scintharus and two of my comrades on board. Advancing through a flowery mead, we came upon

*vocabulary*

δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl)  
 headdress  
 διαγωνίζομαι contend against  
 δικάζω judge  
 εἴτε if, whenever; either/or  
 ἐλλέβορος hellebore  
 ἐρωτικός amorous  
 ἥρως hero ~hero  
 ἱατρός (ᾱ) physician  
 κατηγορέω accuse; indicate  
 κρίσις -εως (f) decision, issue  
 μαίνομαι be berserk ~maenad

μετέχω partake of  
 πότερος which, whichever of two  
 προσαγορεύω address, call by name  
 ῥόδινος of roses  
 στέφανος ring  
 συμπόσιον drinking party  
 σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion  
 συνίημι send together; hear, notice,  
 understand ~jet  
 συνοικέω live together  
 σωφρονέω be sane, moderate  
 τέταρτος fourth ~trapezoid

οἱ δὲ δῆσαντες ἡμᾶς ῥοδίνοις στεφάνοις— οὗτος γὰρ μέγιστος παρ' αὐτοῖς δεσμός ἐστιν— ἀνῆγον ὡς τὸν ἄρχοντα, παρ' ὧν δὴ καὶ καθ' ὁδὸν ἠκούσαμεν ὡς ἡ μὲν νῆσος εἴη τῶν Μακάρων<sup>1</sup> προσαγορευομένη, ἄρχοι δὲ ὁ Κρήης Ραδάμανθυς. καὶ δὴ ἀναχθέντες ὡς αὐτὸν ἐν τάξει τῶν δικαζομένων ἔστημεν τέταρτοι.

Ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν πρώτη δίκη περὶ Αἴαντος τοῦ Τελαμώνος, εἴτε χρὴ αὐτὸν συνεῖναι τοῖς ἥρωσι εἴτε καὶ μή· κατηγορεῖτο δὲ αὐτοῦ ὅτι μεμήνηοι καὶ ἑαυτὸν ἀπεκτόνοι. τέλος δὲ πολλῶν ῥηθέντων ἔγνω ὁ Ραδάμανθυς, νῦν μὲν αὐτὸν πιόμενον τοῦ ἐλλεβόρου παραδοθῆναι Ἰπποκράτει τῷ Κῶφ ἰατρῷ, ὕστερον δὲ σωφρονήσαντα μετέχειν τοῦ συμποσίου.

Δευτέρα δὲ ἦν κρίσις ἐρωτική, Θησέως καὶ Μενελάου περὶ τῆς Ἑλένης διαγωνιζομένων, ποτέρῳ χρὴ αὐτὴν συνοικεῖν. καὶ ὁ Ραδάμανθυς ἐδίκασε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι

<sup>1</sup> The myth of the Fortunate Isles dates to Hesiod, but this lengthy section of the narrative also contains many features that seem reminiscent of the Christian doctrines of heaven and hell.

οἱ δὲ δῆσαντες ἡμᾶς |of roses |ring — οὗτος γὰρ  
 μέγιστος παρ' αὐτοῖς |bond, ἐστιν— ἀνῆγον ὡς τὸν  
 |latch,  
 ἄρχοντα, παρ' ὧν δὴ καὶ καθ' ὁδὸν ἠκούσαμεν ὡς ἡ μὲν  
 |strap  
 νῆσος εἶη τῶν Μακάρων<sup>1</sup> |address, call by name ἄρχοι δὲ ὁ  
 Κρῆς Ραδάμανθυς. καὶ δὴ ἀναχθέντες ὡς αὐτὸν ἐν τάξει  
 τῶν |judge ἔστημεν |fourth .

Ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν πρώτη δίκη περὶ Αἴαντος τοῦ Τελαμῶνος,  
 |if, whenever; ὅτε; ὅταν |either/or; ὅταν |hero |if, whenever; ἡ' |either/or  
 |accuse; δὲ αὐτοῦ ὅτι |be berserk αἰ ἐαυτὸν ἀπεκτόνοι.  
 |indicate  
 τέλος δὲ πολλῶν ῥηθέντων ἔγνω ὁ Ραδάμανθυς, νῦν μὲν  
 αὐτὸν πιόμενον τοῦ |hellebore παραδοθῆναι Ἱπποκράτει  
 τῷ Κῳφῷ |physician ἵστερον δὲ |be sane, moderate |partake of τοῦ  
 |drinking  
 |party

Δευτέρα δὲ ἦν |decision, |amorous , Θησέως καὶ Μενελάου  
 |issue  
 περὶ τῆς Ἑλένης |contend against , |which, ἥρῃ αὐτὴν  
 |whichever  
 |live together αἰ ὁ Ραδάμανθυς |judge Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι

<sup>1</sup> The myth of the Fortunate Isles dates to Hesiod, but this lengthy section of the narrative also contains many features that seem reminiscent of the Christian doctrines of heaven and hell.

the guards and sentinels, who bound us with rosy wreaths—the strongest fetter that they have—and led us inland to their ruler. They told us on the way that the island was the one that is called the Isle of the Blest, and that the ruler was the Cretan Rhadamanthus. On being brought before him, we were given fourth place among the people awaiting trial.

The first case was that of Ajax, son of Telamon, to decide whether he should be allowed to associate with the heroes or not: he was accused of having gone mad and killed himself. At last, when much had been said, Rhadamanthus gave judgment that for the present he should be given in charge of Hippocrates, the Coan physician, to take the hellebore treatment, and that later on, when he had recovered his wits, he should have a place at the table of the heroes.

The second case was a love-affair—Theseus and Menelaus at law over Helen, to determine which of the two she should live with. Rhadamanthus pronounced that she should

*vocabulary*

**Ἄννιβας** Hannibal

**ἀποδημία** foreign travel

**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare

**ἄρnuμαι** get, win

**ἅτε** as if; since

**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate

**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy

**διηγέομαι** detail, describe

**δικάζω** judge

**ἐξῆς** in turn

**ἐπειδάν** when, after

**ἐπιδημία** a stay, visit

**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through

**εὐθυνα** (ὅ) examination of conduct

**εὐθύνω** (ὅ) straighten; examine one's conduct

**ἥρω** hero ~hero

**θρόνος** seat, chair, throne ~throne

**Καρχηδόνιος** Carthaginian

**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that

**μεθίστημι** change, substitute; withdraw; change sides; (mid) send away ~station

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia

**προεδρία** pride of place

**προέχω** be ahead, jut forward; mid: have before one

**προθεσμία** appointed time

**προσάγω** bring to a place  
~demagogue

**προχέω** stream toward; pour out

**ῥητός** stated, agreed on ~rhetoric

**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
~skeptic

**συνδιαιτάομαι** live together

**συνεδρεύω** sit in council

**σύνεδρος** sitting with in council

**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid

**φιλοπραγμοσύνη** meddlesomeness, busyness

**χωρίον** area; downwards

αὐτὴν ἄτε καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσαντι καὶ κινδυνεύσαντι τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα· καὶ γὰρ αὖ τῷ Θησεὶ καὶ ἄλλας εἶναι γυναῖκας, τὴν τε Ἀμαζόνα καὶ τὰς τοῦ Μίνως θυγατέρας.

Τρίτη δ' ἐδικάσθη περὶ προεδρίας Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τε τῷ Φιλίππου καὶ Ἀννίβᾳ τῷ Καρχηδονίῳ, καὶ ἔδοξε προέχειν ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ θρόνος αὐτῷ ἐτέθη παρὰ Κῦρον τὸν Πέρσῃν τὸν πρότερον.

Τέταρτοι δὲ ἡμεῖς προσήχθημεν· καὶ ὁ μὲν ἤρετο τί παθόντες ἔτι ζῶντες ἱεροῦ χωρίου ἐπιβαίημεν· ἡμεῖς δὲ πάντα ἐξῆς διηγησάμεθα. οὕτω δὲ μεταστησάμενος ἡμᾶς ἐπὶ πολὺν χρόνον ἐσκέπτετο καὶ τοῖς συνέδροις ἐκοινούτο περὶ ἡμῶν. συνήδρευον δὲ ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ Ἀριστείδης ὁ δίκαιος ὁ Ἀθηναῖος. ὥς δὲ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ, ἀπεφώνησαντο, τῆς μὲν φιλοπραγμοσύνης καὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας, ἐπειδὴν ἀποθάνωμεν, δοῦναι τὰς εὐθύνas, τὸ δὲ νῦν ῥήτὸν χρόνον μέιναντας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ καὶ συνδιαιτηθέντας τοῖς ἥρωσι ἀπελθεῖν. ἔταξαν δὲ καὶ τὴν προθεσμίαν τῆς ἐπιδημίας μὴ πλέον μηνῶν ἑπτὰ.



αὐτὴν ἄτε καὶ τοσαῦτα |work καὶ |encounter danger; (+inf) there is  
|a danger that  
|wedding, "sex" καὶ γὰρ αὖ τῷ Θησεὶ καὶ ἄλλας εἶναι  
γυναικάς, τήν τε Ἀμαζόνα καὶ τὰς τοῦ Μίνως θυγατέρας.

Τρίτη δ' |judge περὶ προεδρίας Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τε τῷ  
Φιλίππου καὶ |Hannibal ῶ Καρχηδονίῳ, καὶ ἔδοξε προέχειν  
ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ |chair αὐτῷ ἐτέθη παρὰ Κῦρον τὸν  
Πέρσῃν τὸν πρότερον.

|fourth δὲ ἡμεῖς |bring to a place καὶ ὁ μὲν ἤρετο τί  
παθόντες ἔτι ζῶντες ἱεροῦ |area; downwards, "μεν" ἡμεῖς δὲ  
πάντα |in |detail, describe οὕτω δὲ |change, substitute; withdraw; change  
|turn |sides; (mid) send away  
ἐπὶ πολὺν χρόνον |look, look at, watch ~ |sitting with κοινοῦτο  
|in council  
περὶ ἡμῶν. |sit in council δὲ ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ Ἀριστείδης  
ὁ δίκαιος ὁ Ἀθηναῖος. ὥς δὲ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ, |display,  
|declare  
τῆς μὲν |meddlesomeness, καὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας, |when,  
|busyness |after  
ἀποθάνωμεν, δοῦναι τὰς εὐθύνας, τὸ δὲ νῦν |stated, χρόνον  
|agreed  
μείναντας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ καὶ |live together |on τοῖς |hero  
ἀπελθεῖν. ἔταξαν δὲ καὶ τὴν |appointed time ἧς |a stay, visit  
μὴ πλέον μηνῶν ἐπτά.

live with Menelaus, because he had undergone so much toil and danger on account of his marriage: then too, Theseus had other wives, the Amazon and the daughters of Minos.

The third judgment was given in a matter of precedence between Alexander, son of Philip, and Hannibal of Carthage, and the decision was that Alexander outranked Hannibal, so his chair was placed next the elder Cyrus of Persia.

We were brought up fourth; and he asked us how it was that we trod on holy ground while still alive, and we told him the whole story. Then he had us removed, pondered for a long time, and consulted with his associates about us. Among many other associates he had Aristides the Just, of Athens. When he had come to a conclusion, sentence was given that for being inquisitive and not staying at home we should be tried after death, but that for the present we might stop a definite time in the island and share the life of the heroes, and then we must be off. They set the length of our stay at not more than seven months.

*vocabulary*

ἄμεθύστινος of amethyst  
 ἀναφής impalpable  
 ἀράχνιον spiderweb  
 ἄσαρκος lean  
 ἀσώματος incorporeal  
 αὐτόματος self-willed, accidental  
 ~after  
 βάθος -ους (n, 3) depth, height  
 βασιλικός royal  
 βήρυλλος beryl  
 βωμός altar; stand, pedestal  
 δρόσος (f) dew, pure water  
 ἔδαφος -ους (n, 3) ground, floor  
 ~edifice  
 ἑκατόμβη hectomb  
 ἐκκαίω set on fire  
 ἐλεφάντινος of ivory  
 ἐμφαίνω display in  
 ἐντός within  
 ἐσθής clothes ~vest  
 εὐμαρής easy, convenient  
 θερμός warm, hot ~thermos  
 ἰδέα ἰδῆς semblance; kind, style  
 κινέω (i) set in motion, move, remove  
 ~kinetic  
 κινναμώμιος of cinnamon  
 κιννάμωμον cinnamon; fabulous bird

λεπτός thin  
 λίθος (f) stone ~monolith  
 λουτρόν bathing water  
 μονόλιθος made of one stone  
 μονόξυλος canoe  
 μορφή beauty  
 μύρον oil, perfume  
 μύρω (ō) weep  
 ναός (ā) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
 νέω spin; swim ~neuro  
 οἰκοδομέω build, build a house  
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless  
 περὶκειμαι set about, cover, be a profit  
 περιρρέω flow around ~rheostat  
 πῆχυς forearm, cubit  
 πλάτος -εος (n, 3) width  
 πορφύρεος purple  
 πορφυρέω heave (like the sea)  
 πορφυροῦς purple  
 πυέλος tub, coffin  
 πύλη gate ~Thermopylae  
 ῥέω flow ~rheostat  
 σμαράγδινος emerald  
 στέφανος ring  
 συμπόσιον drinking party  
 συνίστημι unite; confront in battle  
 ~station  
 ὑάλινος of glass

## 2.11-13

Τοῦντεῦθεν αὐτομάτων ἡμῖν τῶν στεφάνων περιρρυνέντων ἐλελύμεθα καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἡγόμεθα καὶ εἰς τὸ τῶν Μακάρων συμπόσιον. αὐτὴ μὲν οὖν ἡ πόλις πᾶσα χρυσῇ, τὸ δὲ τεῖχος περίκειται σμαράγδινον· πύλαι δέ εἰσιν ἑπτά, πᾶσαι μονόξυλοι κινναμώμιοι· τὸ μέντοι ἔδαφος τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἡ ἐντὸς τοῦ τείχους γῆ ἐλεφαντίνη· ναοὶ δὲ πάντων θεῶν βηρύλλου λίθου ᾠκοδομημένοι, καὶ βωμοὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς μέγιστοι μονόλιθοι ἀμεθύστινοι, ἐφ' ὧν ποιοῦσι τὰς ἐκατόμβας. περὶ δὲ τὴν πόλιν ῥεῖ ποταμὸς μύρου τοῦ καλλίστου, τὸ πλάτος πήχεων ἑκατὸν βασιλικῶν, βάθος δὲ πέντε ὥστε νεῖν εὐμαρῶς. λουτρὰ δέ ἐστιν αὐτοῖς οἶκοι μεγάλοι ὑάλινοι, τῷ κινναμώμῳ ἐγκαιόμενοι· ἀντὶ μέντοι τοῦ ὕδατος ἐν ταῖς πνέλοις δρόσος θερμὴ ἔστιν. ἐσθῆτι δὲ χρῶνται ἀραχνίοις λεπτοῖς, πορφυροῖς.

Αὐτοὶ δὲ σώματα μὲν οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' ἀναφείς καὶ ἄσαρκοί εἰσιν, μορφὴν δὲ καὶ ἰδέαν μόνην ἐμφαίνουσιν, καὶ ἀσώματοι ὄντες ὅμως συνεστᾶσιν καὶ κινοῦνται καὶ

2.11-13

Τοῦντεῦθεν 

self-willed,  accidental	ἡμῖν τῶν στεφάνων	flow around
-----------------------------	-------------------	-------------

  
ἐλεύμεθα καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἡγόμεθα καὶ εἰς τὸ τῶν  
Μακάρων 

drinking  party	. αὐτὴ μὲν οὖν ἡ πόλις πᾶσα χρυσῇ,	
--------------------	------------------------------------	--

  
τὸ δὲ τεῖχος 

set about,  cover, be a  profit	ἐμερᾶς	πύλαι δὲ εἰσιν ἑπτὰ,
---------------------------------------	--------	----------------------

  
πᾶσαι 

canoe	of cinnamon	τὸ μέντοι <table border="0"><tr><td> ground,  floor</td><td>τῆς</td></tr></table>	ground,  floor	τῆς
ground,  floor	τῆς			

  
πόλεως καὶ ἡ ἐντὸς τοῦ τείχους γῆ 

of ivory	ναοὶ δὲ
----------	---------

  
πάντων θεῶν 

beryl	λίθου ὠκοδομημένοι, καὶ βωμοὶ
-------	-------------------------------

  
ἐν αὐτοῖς μέγιστοι 

made of one  stone	of amethyst	, ἐφ' ᾧ ποιοῦσι
-----------------------	-------------	-----------------

  
τὰς ἑκατόμβας. περὶ δὲ τὴν πόλιν ῥεῖ ποταμὸς μύρου τοῦ  
καλλίστου, τὸ 

width	forearm,  cubit	ἐκατὸν <table border="0"><tr><td> royal</td><td>,  depth,  height</td></tr></table>	royal	,  depth,  height
royal	,  depth,  height			

  
δὲ πέντε ὥστε νεῖν 

easy, conve-  nient	bathing  water	δὲ ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς οἴκοι
------------------------	-------------------	-----------------------

  
μεγάλοι 

of glass	, τῷ <table border="0"><tr><td> cinnamon;  fabulous bird</td><td> set on fire</td><td>ἀντὶ μέντοι</td></tr></table>	cinnamon;  fabulous bird	set on fire	ἀντὶ μέντοι
cinnamon;  fabulous bird	set on fire	ἀντὶ μέντοι		

  
τοῦ ὕδατος ἐν ταῖς πύλαις 

dew,  pure  water	warm, hot . ἢ . ἐσθῆτι δὲ
-------------------------	---------------------------

  
χρῶνται 

spiderweb	λεπτοῖς, πόρφυροῖς.
-----------	---------------------

Αὐτοὶ δὲ σώματα μὲν οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' 

impalpable	. αἱ
------------	------

lean	εἰσιν,  beauty	δὲ καὶ <table border="0"><tr><td> semblance;  kind, style</td><td>,  display in</td></tr></table>	semblance;  kind, style	,  display in
semblance;  kind, style	,  display in			

  
καὶ 

incorporeal	ὄντες ὁμῶς συνεστᾶσιν καὶ κινεῖνται καὶ
-------------	---

**2.11-13**

Thereupon our garlands fell away of themselves, and we were set free and taken into the city and to the table of the blessed. The city itself is all of gold and the wall around it of emerald. It has seven gates, all of single planks of cinnamon. The foundations of the city and the ground within its walls are ivory. There are temples of all the gods, built of beryl, and in them great monolithic altars of amethyst, on which they snake their great burnt-offerings. Around the city runs a river of the finest myrrh, a hundred royal cubits wide and five deep, so that one can swim in it comfortably. For baths they have large houses of glass, warmed by burning cinnamon; instead of water there is hot dew in the tubs. For clothing they use delicate purple spider-webs.

As for themselves, they have no bodies, but are intangible and fleshless, with only shape and figure. Incorporeal as they are, they nevertheless live and move and think and

*vocabulary*

ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἄμπελος (f) vine  
 ἀνατέλλω cause to grow ~apostle  
 ἄνθος flower  
 ἄπτω set on fire; attach; mid: touch,  
 seize ~haptic  
 ἄρτος bread, loaf  
 γηράσκω grow old ~geriatric  
 γοῦν at least then  
 γυμνός naked, unarmed  
 δῖς twice  
 ἔαρ -ος (n) spring (season)  
 ἐξελέγχω convict, refute, test  
 ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail  
 ἐπιχέω pour over  
 ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled  
 ζέφυρος the west wind ~zephyr  
 ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries  
 ἥμερος gentle; (animals) domesticated  
 θάλλω bloom, flourish, abound  
 ~thallium  
 καθάπερ exactly as

καρποφορέω bear fruit  
 λαμπρός brilliant ~lamp  
 λυκαυγής at/of twilight  
 μηδέπω not yet  
 μηλέα -ῆς apple tree  
 ὁμοιότης -τος (f, 3) resemblance  
 ὁπώρα fall (season)  
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just  
 ~orthogonal  
 παραμένω stay with ~remain  
 περίκειμαι set about, cover, be a profit  
 περιπολέω wander, go around  
 πνέω breathe, blow ~apnea  
 πυρός (ῥ) wheat  
 πυρόω burn something  
 ῥοιά pomegranate  
 σκιά shadow ~shadow  
 σκιερός shadowy ~shadow  
 στάχυς head of grain  
 φάος φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)  
 eyes ~photon  
 φυτός natural  
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

φρονούσι καὶ φωνὴν ἀφιασιν, καὶ ὅλως ἔοικε γυμνή τις ἡ ψυχὴ αὐτῶν περιπολεῖν τὴν τοῦ σώματος ὁμοιότητα περικειμένη· εἰ γοῦν μὴ ἄψαιτό τις, οὐκ ἂν ἐξελέγξειε μὴ εἶναι σῶμα τὸ ὁρώμενον· εἰσὶ γὰρ ὥσπερ σκιαὶ ὀρθαί, οὐ μέλαιναι. γηράσκει δὲ οὐδεὶς, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἧς ἂν ἡλικίας ἔλθῃ παραμένει.

Οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ νύξ παρ' αὐτοῖς γίνεται, οὐδὲ ἡμέρα πάνυ λαμπρά· καθάπερ δὲ τὸ λυκανγὲς ἤδη πρὸς ἔω, μηδέπω ἀνατείλαντος ἡλίου, τοιοῦτο φῶς ἐπέχει τὴν γῆν. καὶ μέντοι καὶ ὥραν μίαν ἴσασιν τοῦ ἔτους· αἰεὶ γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῖς ἔαρ ἐστὶ καὶ εἰς ἄνεμος πνέει παρ' αὐτοῖς ὁ ζέφυρος. ἡ δὲ χώρα πᾶσι μὲν ἄνθεσιν, πᾶσι δὲ φυτοῖς ἡμέροις τε καὶ σκιεροῖς τέθηλεν· αἱ μὲν γὰρ ἄμπελοι δωδεκὰ φοροί εἰσιν καὶ κατὰ μῆνα ἕκαστον καρποφοροῦσιν· τὰς δὲ ροιάς καὶ τὰς μηλέας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ὀπώραν ἔλεγον εἶναι τρισκαιδεκάφορον· ἐνὸς γὰρ μηνὸς τοῦ παρ' αὐτοῖς Μινώου δις καρποφορεῖν· ἀντὶ δὲ πυροῦ οἱ στάχυες ἄρτον ἔτοιμον ἐπ' ἄκρων φύουσιν ὥσπερ



φρονούσι καὶ φωνήν ἀφιάσιν, καὶ ὅλως ἔοικε |naked, s  
|unarmed  
ἡ ψυχὴ αὐτῶν |wander, go around οὐ σώματος |resemblance  
|set about, cover, be |at least then, |αὐτό τις, οὐκ ἂν |convict, re- μὴ  
|a profit |fute, test  
εἶναι σῶμα τὸ ὀρώμενον· εἰσὶ γὰρ ὥσπερ |shadow, ρθαί, οὐ  
μέλαιnai. |grow old δὲ οὐδεῖς, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἧς ἂν ἡλικίας ἔλθῃ  
|stay with

Οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ νύξ παρ' αὐτοῖς γίνεται, οὐδὲ ἡμέρα πάνν  
λαμπρά· |exactly as δὲ τὸ |at/of twilight, ἡ πρὸς ἑῷ, |not yet  
|cause to grow ἡλίου, τοιοῦτο φῶς ἐπέχει τὴν γῆν. καὶ  
μέντοι καὶ ὥραν μίαν ἴσασιν τοῦ ἔτους· αἰεὶ γὰρ παρ'  
αὐτοῖς |spring (season) ἄνεμος |breathe, blow ' τοῖς ὁ |the west wind  
ἡ δὲ χώρα πᾶσι μὲν |flower , πᾶσι δὲ |natural |gentle; (animals) do-  
|mesticated  
τε καὶ |shadowy |bloom, flour- μὲν γὰρ |vine δωδεκά  
|ish, abound  
φοροί εἰσιν καὶ κατὰ μῆνα ἕκαστον |bear fruit τὰς  
δὲ |pomegranate. ἰς |apple tree καὶ τὴν ἄλλην |fall (season) ἔχον  
εἶναι τρισκαιδεκάφορον· ἐνὸς γὰρ μηνὸς τοῦ παρ' αὐτοῖς  
Μινώου |twice bear fruit ἀντὶ δὲ πυροῦ οἱ |head of grain οὐ  
ἔτοιμον ἐπ' ἄκρων φύουσιν ὥσπερ

talk. In a word, it would appear that their naked souls go about in the semblance of their bodies. Really, if one did not touch them, he could not tell that what he saw was not a body, for they are like upright shadows, only not black. Nobody grows old, but stays the same age as on coming there.

Again, it is neither night among them nor yet very bright day, but the light which is on the country is like the gray morning toward dawn, when the sun has not yet risen. Moreover, they are acquainted with only one season of the year, for it is always spring there and the only wind that blows there is Zephyr. The country abounds in flowers and plants of all kinds, cultivated and otherwise. The grapevines yield twelve vintages a year, bearing every month; the pomegranates, apples and other fruit-trees were said to bear thirteen times a year, for in one month, their Minoan, they bear twice. Instead of wheat-ears, loaves of bread all baked grow on the tops of the balms, so that they look

*vocabulary*

ἀηδών -όνος (f, 3) nightingale  
 ἀνθέω sprout  
 ἄνθος flower  
 γάλα milk ~galaxy  
 δένδρον tree  
 διακονέω (ᾱ) serve, minister to  
 διαυγής translucent  
 ἔκπωμα -τος (n, 3) drinking cup  
 ἑξήκοντα sixty  
 ἐπειδὴν when, after  
 ἐπισκιάζω throw shade on  
 κατάκειμαι lie down  
 κατασκευή fixed assets; condition  
 λειμών -ος (m, 3) meadow ~limnic  
 μέγεθος -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
 μέλι honey, a sweet  
 μουσική art, music  
 μουσικός musical, aesthetic  
 μύκης -τος (m, 3) mushroom  
 μύρον oil, perfume  
 μύρω (ῶ) weep  
 οἰνοχοέω pour wine ~wine

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus  
 ὄρνειν bird ~ornithology  
 παντοῖος all kinds of  
 παρατίθηναι put near, put at risk  
 ~thesis  
 παραφέρω serve; carry past; outdo  
 παρίηναι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
 πεντακόσιοι 500  
 πηγὴ headwaters, fountain  
 πηγὸς stout, mighty  
 πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of  
 ~plethora  
 ποτήριον cup  
 πυκνός dense, frequent; shrewd  
 στέφανος ring  
 στρωμνὴ bed, bedding  
 συμπόσιον drinking party  
 τριακόσιοι three hundred ~three  
 τρογὰν harvest grapes  
 ὕαλινος of glass  
 ὕαλος crystal  
 ὕλη (ῶ) forest, firewood  
 ὑποβάλλω put under, interrupt  
 ~ballistic

μύκητας. πηγαὶ δὲ περὶ τὴν πόλιν ὕδατος μὲν πέντε καὶ ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιαι, μέλιτος δὲ ἄλλαι τοσαῦται, μύρου δὲ πεντακόσιαι, μικρότεραι μέντοι αὗται, καὶ ποταμοὶ γάλακτος ἑπτὰ καὶ οἶνου ὀκτώ.

## 2.14-16

Τὸ δὲ συμπόσιον ἔξω τῆς πόλεως πεποίηται ἐν τῷ Ἥλυσίῳ καλουμένῳ πεδίῳ· λειμῶν δὲ ἐστὶν κάλλιστος καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ὕλη παντοῖα πυκνή, ἐπισκιάζουσα τοὺς κατακειμένους. καὶ στρωμνὴν μὲν ἐκ τῶν ἀνθῶν ὑποβέβληνται, διακονοῦνται δὲ καὶ παραφέρουσιν ἕκαστα οἱ ἄνεμοι πλήν γε τοῦ οἴνοχοεῖν· τούτου γὰρ οὐδὲν δέονται, ἀλλ' ἔστι δένδρα περὶ τὸ συμπόσιον ὑάλινα μεγάλα τῆς διανγεστάτης ὑάλου, καὶ καρπὸς ἐστὶ τῶν δένδρων τούτων ποτήρια παντοῖα καὶ τὰς κατασκευὰς καὶ τὰ μεγέθη. ἐπειδὰν οὖν παρή τις ἐς τὸ συμπόσιον, τρυγῆσας ἐν ἡ καὶ δύο τῶν ἐκπωμάτων παρατίθεται, τὰ δὲ αὐτίκα οἶνου πλήρη γίνεται. οὕτω μὲν πίνουσιν, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν στεφάνων αἱ ἀηδόνες καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ μουσικὰ ὄρνεα

|mushroom πηγαὶ δὲ περὶ τὴν πόλιν ὕδατος μὲν πέντε  
καὶ ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσαι, |honey δὲ ἄλλαι τοσαῦται,  
μύρου δὲ |500 , μικρότεραι μέντοι αὐται, καὶ  
ποταμοὶ |milk ἑπτὰ καὶ οἴνου |eight .

## 2.14-16

Τὸ δὲ |drinking ἔξω τῆς πόλεως πεποιήνται ἐν τῷ  
|party  
Ἑλυσίῳ καλουμένῳ πεδίῳ· |meadow δέ ἐστιν κάλλιστος  
καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ὕλη |all kinds of .υκνή, |throw shade on τοὺς  
|lie down . καὶ |bed, bedding μὲν ἐκ τῶν ἀνθρώπων  
|put under, inter-|serve, minister δὲ καὶ |serve; carry past; ἕκαστα  
|rupt |to |outdo  
οἱ ἄνεμοι πλήν γε τοῦ |pour wine τούτου γὰρ οὐδὲν δέονται,  
ἀλλ' ἔστι δένδρα περὶ τὸ |drinking |of glass μεγάλα  
|party  
τῆς |translucent |crystal , καὶ καρπὸς ἐστὶ τῶν δένδρων  
τούτων |cup |all kinds of αἱ τὰς |fixed assets; καὶ τὰ  
|condition  
μεγέθη. ἐπειδὴν οὖν |dangle; pass over, |drinking |harvest  
|allow |party |grapes  
ἐν ᾗ καὶ δύο τῶν |drinking cup |put near, put. τὰ δὲ αὐτίκα  
|at risk  
οἴνου |full, complete; u. οὕτω μὲν πίνουσιν, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν  
|(+gen) full of  
|ring αἱ |nightingale ἢ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ μουσικὰ ὄρνεα

like mushrooms. In the neighbourhood of the city there are three hunted and sixty-five springs of water, as many of honey, five hundred of myrrh—much smaller, however—seven rivers of milk and eight of wine.

**2.14-16**

Their table is spread outside the city in the Elysian Fields, a very beautiful mead with thick woods of all sorts round about it, overshadowing the feasters. The couches they lie on are made of flowers, and they are attended and served by the winds, who, however, do not pour out their wine, for they do not need anyone to do this. There are great trees of the clearest glass around the table, and instead of fruit they bear cups of all shapes and sizes. When anyone comes to table he picks one or two of the cups and puts them at his place. These fill with wine at once, and that is the way they get their drink. Instead of garlands, the nightingales and the other song-birds gather flowers in their bills from

*vocabulary*

ᾄδω sing

ἀείδω sing

ἀηδών -όνος (f, 3) nightingale

ἀνασπάω draw again ~spatula

ἀνθολογέω gather flowers

ᾠοιδή song

δεῖπνον meal, food

δεῖπνος meal, food

διαλλάσσω exchange; differ; reconcile

δρόσος (f) dew, pure water

ἐξάρχω take the lead in ~oligarch

ἐξάρχων -οντος (m, 3) ruler, president

ἐπαυλέω accompany on the flute

ἐπειδάν when, after

εὐφροσύνη happiness ~frenzy

ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

ἡρέμα quietly, gently, slowly

θεάομαι look at, behold, consider

~theater

κατάχειμαι lie down

κατανίφω snow all over

κατάρχω hold ready (sacrificial materials) ~oligarch

κύκνος swan ~Cygnus

λειμών -ος (m, 3) meadow ~limnic

λεπτός thin

μουσική art, music

μυρίζω anoint

μύρον oil, perfume

νεφέλη cloud, fog ~nebula

παρέρχομαι pass, escape

παρθένος (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon

πηγή headwaters, fountain

πηγός stout, mighty

πλησίος near, neighboring

πυκνός dense, frequent; shrewd

στησίχορος leading dancers

σμπόσιον drinking party

συνάδω sing together, agree

συνευαχέομαι feast together

σχολάζω have leisure

ὕλη (ῑ) forest, firewood

ὑπερπέτομαι fly over ~petal

ὑποθλίβω (ῑ) press under or gently

ὔω (ῑ) to rain

χελιδών -όνος (f, 3) swallow (bird)

χορός dance; chorus ~terpsichorean

ἐκ τῶν πλησίον λειμώνων τοῖς στόμασιν ἀνθολογοῦντα  
κατανίφει αὐτοὺς μετ' ὥδης ὑπερπετόμενα. καὶ μὴν  
καὶ μυρίζονται ὧδε· νεφέλαι πυκναὶ ἀνασπάσασαι μύρον  
ἐκ τῶν πηγῶν καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐπιστᾶσαι ὑπὲρ  
τὸ συμπόσιον ἡρέμα τῶν ἀνέμων ὑποθλιβόντων ὕουσι  
λεπτὸν ὥσπερ δρόσον. ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ δείπνῳ μουσικῇ τε  
καὶ ὠδαῖς σχολάζουσιν· ᾄδεται δὲ αὐτοῖς τὰ Ὀμήρου ἔπη  
μάλιστα· καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ πάρεστι καὶ συνευχεῖται αὐτοῖς  
ὑπὲρ τὸν Ὀδυσσεά κατακείμενος.

Οἱ μὲν οὖν χοροὶ ἐκ παίδων εἰσὶν καὶ παρθένων· ἐξάρχουσι  
δὲ καὶ συνάδουσιν Εὐνομός τε ὁ Λοκρὸς καὶ Ἀρίων  
ὁ Λέσβιος καὶ Ἀνακρέων καὶ Στησίχορος· καὶ γὰρ  
τοῦτον παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐθεασάμην, ἤδη τῆς Ἑλένης αὐτῷ  
διηλλαγμένης. ἐπειδὰν δὲ οὗτοι παύσωνται ᾄδοντες,  
δεύτερος χορὸς παρέρχεται ἐκ κύκνων καὶ χελιδόνων καὶ  
ἀηδόνων. ἐπειδὰν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ᾄσωσιν, τότε ἤδη πᾶσα ἡ  
ὕλη ἐπαυλεῖ τῶν ἀνέμων καταρχόντων. μέγιστον δὲ δὴ  
πρὸς εὐφροσύνην ἐκείνο ἔχουσιν· πηγαί εἰσι δύο παρὰ



ἐκ τῶν πλησίον |meadow τοῖς στόμασιν |gather flowers  
 |snow all over...ὕτους μετ' ὥδης |fly over . καὶ μὴν  
 καὶ |anoint ὥδε· |cloud, fog...υκναὶ |draw again |oil, perfume  
 ἐκ τῶν πηγῶν καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐπιστᾶσαι ὑπὲρ  
 τὸ |drinking |quietly, gen- ἀνέμων |press under or |to rain  
 |party |tly, slowly |gently  
 |thin ὥσπερ |dew, pure water Ἰὲ τῷ δείπνῳ |art, music τε  
 καὶ ὥδαις |have leisure ἄδεται δὲ αὐτοῖς τὰ Ὀμήρου ἔπη  
 μάλιστα· καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ πάρεστι καὶ |feast together αὐτοῖς  
 ὑπὲρ τὸν Ὀδυσσεά |lie down  
 Οἱ μὲν οὖν |dance; ἡ παιδων εἰσὶν καὶ |girl, virgin ἐξάρχουσι  
 |chorus  
 δὲ καὶ |sing together, agree ἄλός τε ὁ Λοκρὸς καὶ Ἀρίων  
 ὁ Λέσβιος καὶ Ἀνακρέων καὶ |leading καὶ γὰρ  
 |dancers  
 τοῦτον παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐθεασάμην, ἥδη τῆς Ἑλένης αὐτῷ  
 |exchange; differ; ἐπειδὴν δὲ οὗτοι παύσωνται ἄδοντες,  
 |reconcile  
 δεύτερος |dance; παρέρχεται ἐκ |swan καὶ |swallow (bird)...  
 |chorus  
 |nightingale ἐπειδὴν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ἄσωσιν, τότε ἥδη πᾶσα ἡ  
 ὕλη |accompany ὦν ἀνέμων |hold ready μέγιστον δὲ δὴ  
 |on the flute  
 πρὸς |happiness ἐκεῖνο ἔχουσιν· πηγαί εἰσι δύο παρὰ

the fields hard by and drop them down like snow, flying overhead and singing. Furthermore, the way they are scented is that thick clouds draw up myrrh from the springs and the river, stand over the table and under the gentle manipulation of the winds rain down a delicate dew. At the board they pass their time with poetry and song. For the most part they sing the epics of Homer, who is there himself and shares the revelry, lying at table in the place above Odysseus.

Their choruses are of boys and girls, led and accompanied by Eunomus of Locris, Anion of Lesbos, Anacreon and Stesichorus. There can be no doubt about the latter, for I saw him there — by that time Helen had forgiven him. When they stop singing another chorus appears, composed of swans and swallows and nightingales, and as they sing the whole wood renders the accompaniment, with the winds leading. But the greatest thing that they have for ensuring a good time is that two springs

*vocabulary*

ἄδολεσχέω (ἄ) prattle  
 ἄνευ away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
 ἄσεβέω be impious  
 ἄσεβής profane  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at  
 γέλως laughter  
 γοῦν at least then  
 διάγω lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
 διελέγχω refute; try; convict; expose  
 ἐκάτερος each of two  
 ἐπίσημον mark, badge  
 ἐπίσημος marked, significant

ἐράω desire sexually  
 εὐωχία partying  
 ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
 ἡδονή pleasure  
 ἡμίθεος -οῦ half-divine ~hemisphere  
 θεάομαι look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
 κολάζω punish  
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise  
 στρατεύω make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
 συμπόσιον drinking party  
 φάσκω declare, promise, think ~fame  
 χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage  
 χῶρος place ~heir

τὸ συμπόσιον, ἡ μὲν γέλωτος, ἡ δὲ ἡδονῆς· ἐκ τούτων  
ἐκατέρας πάντες ἐν ἀρχῇ τῆς εὐωχίας πίνουσιν καὶ τὸ  
λοιπὸν ἡδόμενοι καὶ γελῶντες διάγουσιν.

## 2.17-18

Βούλομαι δὲ εἰπεῖν καὶ τῶν ἐπισήμων οὐστίνας παρ'  
αὐτοῖς ἔθεασάμην· πάντας μὲν τοὺς ἡμιθέους καὶ τοὺς ἐπὶ  
ἄϊλιον στρατεύσαντας πλήν γε δὴ τοῦ Λοκροῦ Αἴαντος,  
ἐκείνον δὲ μόνον ἔφασκον ἐν τῷ τῶν ἀσεβῶν χώρῳ  
κολάζεσθαι, βαρβάρων δὲ Κύρους τε ἀμφοτέρους καὶ  
τὸν Σκύθην Ἀνάχαρσιν καὶ τὸν Θρᾶκα Ζάμολξιν καὶ  
Νομᾶν τὸν Ἰταλιώτην, καὶ μὴν καὶ Λυκοῦργον τὸν  
Λακεδαιμόνιον καὶ Φωκίωνα καὶ Τέλλον τοὺς Ἀθηναίους,  
καὶ τοὺς σοφοὺς ἄνευ Περιάνδρου. εἶδον δὲ καὶ Σωκράτη  
τὸν Σωφρονίσκου ἀδολεσχοῦντα μετὰ Νέστορος καὶ  
Παλαμίδους· περὶ δὲ αὐτὸν ἦσαν Ὑάκινθος τε ὁ  
Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ὁ Θεσπιεὺς Νάρκισσος καὶ Ἥγλας καὶ  
ἄλλοι καλοί. καί μοι ἐδόκει ἐρᾶν τοῦ Ὑακίνθου· τὰ πολλὰ  
γούν ἐκείνον διήλεγχεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ χαλεπαίνειν

τὸ |drinking , ἡ μὲν |laughter , ἡ δὲ |pleasure ἐκ τούτων  
 |party  
 |each of two .|άντες ἐν ἀρχῇ τῆς |partying πίνουσιν καὶ τὸ  
 λοιπὸν |ῥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy;|lead through;  
 |or ῥδομαι?: be pleased, en-|pass a time  
 |joy  
 2.17-18

Βούλομαι δὲ εἰπεῖν καὶ τῶν ἐπισήμων οὔστινας παρ'  
 αὐτοῖς ἐθεασάμην· πάντας μὲν τοὺς |half-divine καὶ τοὺς ἐπὶ  
 ἄϊλιον |make an expedition, λήν γε δὴ τοῦ Λοκροῦ Αἴαντος,  
 |war, campaign  
 ἐκεῖνον δὲ μόνον |declare, promise, ὃ τῶν ἀσεβῶν |place  
 |think  
 |punish , |non-Greek δὲ Κύρους τε ἀμφοτέρους καὶ  
 τὸν Σκύθην Ἀνάχαρσιν καὶ τὸν Θρᾶκα Ζάμολξιν καὶ  
 Νομᾶν τὸν Ἰταλιώτην, καὶ μὴν καὶ Λυκοῦργον τὸν  
 Λακεδαιμόνιον καὶ Φωκίωνα καὶ Τέλλον τοὺς Ἀθηναίους,  
 καὶ τοὺς |skilled, |away from; not, hav- εἶδον δὲ καὶ Σωκράτη  
 |clever, |ing; not needing  
 |wise  
 τὸν Σωφρονίσκου |prattle μετὰ Νέστορος καὶ  
 Παλαμῆδους· περὶ δὲ αὐτὸν ἦσαν Ὑακίνθος τε ὁ  
 Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ὁ Θεσπιεὺς Νάρκισσος καὶ ἦΥλας καὶ  
 ἄλλοι καλοί. καί μοι ἐδόκει ἐρᾶν τοῦ Ὑακίνθου· τὰ πολλὰ  
 |at least then |refute; try; con- ἔγετο δὲ |be violent, rage  
 |vict; expose

are by the table, one of laughter and the other of enjoyment. They all drink from each of these when the revels begin, and thenceforth enjoy themselves and laugh all the while.

**2.17-18**

But I desire to mention the famous men whom I saw there. There were all the demigods and the veterans of Troy except Locrian Ajax, the only one, they said, who was being punished in the place of the wicked. Of the barbarians there were both Cyruses, the Scythian Anacharsis, the Thracian Zamolxis and Numa the Italian. In addition, there were Lycurgus of Sparta, Phocion and Tellus of Athens and the wise men, all but Periander. I also saw Socrates, the son of Sophroniscus, chopping logic with Nestor and Palamedes; about him were Hyacinthus of Sparta, Narcissus of Thespieae, Hylas and other handsome lads. It seemed to me that Hyacinthus was his especial favourite, for at any rate he refuted him most. It was said that Rhadamanthus was

*vocabulary*

ἀναπλάσσω remodel  
 ἀπειλέω vow, threaten, boast  
 ἀρετή goodness, excellence  
 γαμέω marry, take as a lover ~bigamy  
 γελωτοποιός clown, clownish  
 διασκέπτομαι consider from all angles  
 εἰρωνεία mock ignorance  
 ἐκβάλλω throw out, fell, let fall  
 ~ballistic  
 ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail  
 ἐπιβαίνω (+gen) set foot on, board,  
 climb ~basis  
 ἐπιχέω pour over  
 εὖωχέω fete, feed well  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

θέμις -τος (f) custom, law  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
 μέθη strong drink, drunkenness  
 μεταβάλλω alter, transform  
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics  
 ὄρθιος shrill; steep, straight  
 ὀρχέομαι dance  
 παροινέω drunkly act badly  
 πολιτεία (i) citizenship; government  
 συγγράφω write down  
 συμποτικός convivial  
 τέταρτος fourth ~trapezoid  
 φλυαρέω talk foolishly  
 χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

αὐτῷ ὁ Ραδάμανθυς καὶ ἡπειληκέναι πολλάκις ἐκβαλεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς νήσου, ἣν φλυαρῇ καὶ μὴ ἐθέλῃ ἀφεῖς τὴν εἰρωνείαν εὐωχεῖσθαι. Πλάτων δὲ μόνος οὐ παρῆν, ἀλλ' ἐλέγετο καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν τῇ ἀναπλασθείσῃ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ πόλει οἰκεῖν χρώμενος τῇ πολιτείᾳ καὶ τοῖς νόμοις οἷς συνέγραψεν. οἱ μέντοι ἀμφ' Ἀρίστιππόν τε ὄντες Ἐπίκουρον τὰ πρῶτα παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐφέροντο ἡδέεις τε ὄντες καὶ κεχαρισμένοι καὶ συμποτικώτατοι. παρῆν δὲ καὶ Αἴσωπος ὁ Φρύξ· τούτῳ δὲ ὅσα καὶ γελωτοποιῶ χρῶνται. Διογένης μὲν γε ὁ Σινωπεὺς τοσοῦτον μετέβαλεν τοῦ τρόπου, ὥστε γῆμαι μὲν ἐταίραν τὴν Λαΐδα, ὀρχεῖσθαι δὲ πολλάκις ὑπὸ μέθης ἀνιστάμενον καὶ παροινεῖν. τῶν δὲ Στωϊκῶν οὐδεὶς παρῆν· ἔτι γὰρ ἐλέγοντο ἀναβαίνειν τὸν τῆς ἀρετῆς ὄρθιον λόφον. ἡκούομεν δὲ καὶ περὶ Χρυσίππου ὅτι οὐ πρότερον αὐτῷ ἐπιβῆναι τῆς νήσου θέμις, πρὶν τὸ τέταρτον ἑαυτὸν ἐλλεβορίσῃ. τοὺς δὲ Ἀκαδημαῖκους ἔλεγον ἐθέλειν μὲν ἐλθεῖν, ἐπέχειν δὲ ἔτι καὶ διασκέπτεσθαι· μηδὲ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτό πω καταλαμβάνειν,



αὐτῷ ὁ Ραδάμανθυς καὶ |vow, threaten,|often |throw out,  
|boast |fell, let fall

αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς νήσου, ἣν |talk foolishly ` μὴ ἐθέλῃ ἀφείς

τὴν |mock igno-|fete, feed well Πλάτων δὲ μόνος οὐ παρῆν,  
|rance

ἀλλ' ἐλέγετο καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν τῇ ἀναπλασθείσῃ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ

πόλει |inhabit χρώμενος τῇ |citizenship; αἱ τοῖς νόμοις  
|government

οἷς |write down . οἱ μέντοι ἀμφ' Ἀρίστιππόν τε ὄντες

Ἐπίκουρον τὰ πρῶτα παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐφέροντο |sweet τε ὄντες

καὶ |gratify καὶ |convivial παρῆν δὲ καὶ

Αἰσωπος ὁ Φρύξ· τούτῳ δὲ ὅσα καὶ |clown, χρώνται.  
|clownish

Διογένης μὲν γε ὁ Σινωπεὺς τοσοῦτον |alter, τοῦ  
|transform

τρόπον, ὥστε |marry, take ἑταίραν τὴν Λαΐδα, |dance  
|as a lover

δὲ |often ὑπὸ |strong drink, ἀμενον καὶ |drunkly act badly  
|drunkenness

δὲ Στωϊκῶν οὐδείς παρῆν· ἔτι γὰρ ἐλέγοντο ἀναβαίνειν

τὸν τῆς |excel- |shrill; |neck, crest ὃν ἀόμεν δὲ καὶ περὶ  
|lence |steep, |helmet, hilltop

Χρυσίππου ὅτι οὐ πρότερον αὐτῷ |straight |(+gen) set foot ἥσου  
|on, board, climb

|custom, law ` τὸ |fourth ἐαυτὸν ἐλλεβορίσῃ. τοὺς δὲ

Ἀκαδημαϊκοὺς ἔλεγον ἐθέλειν μὲν ἐλθεῖν, ἐπέχειν δὲ ἔτι καὶ

|consider from all μηδὲ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτό πω |seize, understand, catch, over-  
|angles |take; (mp) happen

angry at Socrates and had often threatened to banish him from the island if he kept up his nonsense and would not quit his irony and be merry. Plato alone was not there: it was said that he was living in his imaginary city under the constitution and the laws that he himself wrote. The followers of Aristippus and Epicurus were in the highest favour among the heroes because they are pleasant and agreeable and jolly good fellows. Aesop the Phrygian was also there—they have him for a jester. Diogenes the Cynic had so changed his ways that he not only married Lais the courtesan, but often got up and danced and indulged in tomfoolery when he had had too much. None of the Stoics was there—they were said to be still on the way up the steep hill of virtue. With regard to Chrysippus, we heard tell that he is not permitted to set foot on the island until he submits himself to the hellebore treatment for the fourth time. They said that the Academicians wanted to come but were still holding off and debating, for they could not arrive at a conclusion even on the question

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχρός** shameful

**ἀκολουθέω** follow

**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy

**ἀναστρέφω** act; overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy

**ἀναφανδόν** openly ~photon

**ἀξιόλογος** remarkable

**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse

**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail

**ἀρνέομαι** deny, refuse, repudiate

**ἄρσην** male

**ἅτε** as if; since

**ἀφροδίσιος** sexual

**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate

**γοῦν** at least then

**ἐπιορκέω** swear falsely ~oath

**καθαρός** clean, pure

**καταγιγνώσκω** judge negatively

**καταίρω** swoop; land

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

**καταράομαι** (αἶα) curse

**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**κρίσις** -εως (f) decision, issue

**κριτήριον** criterion; tribunal

**νῶθεια** slowness

**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to

**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone

**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex

**πλησίος** near, neighboring

**συνουσία** society, sex

**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt

**τιμόω** honor, exalt

**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame

**φθονέω** envy

εἰ καὶ νῆσός τις τοιαύτη ἐστίν. ἄλλως τε τὴν ἐπὶ τοῦ Ραδαμάνθυος, οἶμαι, κρίσιν ἐδεδοίκεσαν, ἅτε καὶ τὸ κριτήριον αὐτοὶ ἀνηρηκότες. πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν ἔφασκον ὀρμηθέντας ἀκολουθεῖν τοῖς ἀφικνουμένοις ὑπὸ νωθείας ἀπολείπεσθαι μὴ καταλαμβάνοντας καὶ ἀναστρέφειν ἐκ μέσης τῆς ὁδοῦ.

## 2.19

Οὗτοι μὲν οὖν ἦσαν οἱ ἀξιολογώτατοι τῶν παρόντων. τιμῶσι δὲ μάλιστα τὸν Ἀχιλλέα καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Θησέα. περὶ δὲ συνουσίας καὶ ἀφροδισίων οὕτω φρονοῦσιν· μίσγονται μὲν ἀναφανδὸν πάντων ὁρώντων καὶ γυναιξὶ καὶ ἄρρεσι, καὶ οὐδαμῶς τοῦτο αὐτοῖς αἰσχρὸν δοκεῖ· μόνος δὲ Σωκράτης διώμνυτο ἢ μὴν καθαρῶς πλησιάζειν τοῖς νέοις· καὶ μέντοι πάντες αὐτοῦ ἐπιорκεῖν κατεγίνωσκον· πολλάκις γοῦν ὁ μὲν Ὑάκινθος ἢ ὁ Νάρκισσος ὠμολόγουν, ἐκεῖνος δὲ ἡρνεῖτο. αἱ δὲ γυναικὲς εἰσι πᾶσι κοιναὶ καὶ οὐδεὶς φθονεῖ τῷ πλησίον, ἀλλ' εἰσὶ περὶ τοῦτο μάλιστα Πλατωνικώτατοι· καὶ οἱ παῖδες δὲ

εἰ καὶ νῆσός τις τοιαύτη ἐστίν. ἄλλως τε τὴν ἐπὶ  
 τοῦ Ραδαμάνθυος, οἶμαι, |decision, |declared, ἄτε καὶ τὸ  
 |tribunal |take up . πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν |declare, promise,  
 |criterion; |think  
 ὀρμηθέντας |follow τοῖς ἀφικνουμένοις ὑπὸ |slowness  
 ἀπολείπεσθαι μὴ |seize, understand, catch |act: overturn; mid:  
 |overtake; (mp) happen |find oneself in  
 μέσης τῆς ὁδοῦ.

## 2.19

Οὗτοι μὲν οὖν ἦσαν οἱ |remarkable τῶν παρόντων.  
 τιμῶσι δὲ μάλιστα τὸν Ἀχιλλέα καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον  
 Θησέα. περὶ δὲ συνουσίας καὶ |sexual οὕτω  
 φρονοῦσιν· μίσγονται μὲν |openly πάντων ὁρώντων  
 καὶ γυναιξὶ καὶ |male , καὶ |not anyone. οὗτο αὐτοῖς |shameful  
 δοκεῖ· μόνος δὲ Σωκράτης διώμνυτο ἥ μὴν καθαρῶς  
 |bring/be near; |swear  
 |have sex |falsely  
 κατεγίνωσκον· |often |at least then ἔνι Ὑάκινθος ἥ ὁ  
 Νάρκισσος |agree with/to, ἐκεῖνος δὲ |deny, |refuse . αἱ δὲ γυναικῆς  
 εἰσι πᾶσι |communal, |ordinary οὐδεὶς |envy τῷ |near , ἀλλ' εἰσὶ  
 περὶ τοῦτο μάλιστα Πλατωνικώτατοι· καὶ οἱ παῖδες δὲ

whether such an island existed. Then too I suppose they feared to have Rhadamanthus judge them, as they themselves had abolished standards of judgment. It was said, however, that many of them had started to follow people coming thither, but fell behind through their slowness, being constitutionally unable to arrive at anything, and so turned back half-way.

## 2.19

These were the most conspicuous of those present. They render especial honours to Achilles and after him to Theseus. About love-making their attitude is such that they have sex openly, in plain sight of everyone, with both men and women, and think no shame of it at all. Socrates, the only exception, used to protest that he was above suspicion in his relations with young persons, but everyone held him guilty of perjury. In fact, Hyacinthus and Narcissus often said that they knew better, but he persisted in his denial. They all have their wives in common and nobody is jealous of his neighbour; in this point they out-Plato Plato. The boys

*vocabulary*

ἄγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic  
 ἄθετέω renege, cancel  
 ἀλλάσσω trade, transform  
 ἄμφω both ~amphora  
 ἀντιλέγω contradict, oppose  
 γραμματικός literate; grammar  
 διέρχομαι pierce, traverse  
 εἰσέτι still, yet  
 ἐπερωτάω consult, ask  
 ἐρωτάω ask about something  
 καταγιγνώσκω judge negatively  
 μῆνις -ος (f) rage

ὅθεν whence  
 οὐπω no longer  
 ποιητής -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author  
 ποιητός made, well-made ~poet  
 πότε when?  
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
 προσηγορία greeting, name  
 σμυρναῖος of myrrh  
 στίχος line of soldiers, writing  
 σχολή rest, leisure  
 φάσκω declare, promise, think ~fame  
 ψυχρολογία nonsense

παρέχουσι τοῖς βουλομένοις οὐδὲν ἀντιλέγοντες.

## 2.20

Οὐπω δὲ δύο ἢ τρεῖς ἡμέραι διεληλύθεσαν, καὶ προσελθὼν ἐγὼ Ὀμήρῳ τῷ ποιητῇ, σχολῆς οὔσης ἀμφοῖν, τά τε ἄλλα ἐπυνθανόμην καὶ ὅθεν εἶη, λέγων τοῦτο μάλιστα παρ' ἡμῖν εἰσέτι νῦν ζητεῖσθαι. ὁ δὲ οὐδ' αὐτὸς μὲν ἀγνοεῖν ἔφασκεν ὥς οἱ μὲν Χῖον, οἱ δὲ Σμυρναῖον, πολλοὶ δὲ Κολοφώνιον αὐτὸν νομίζουσιν· εἶναι μέντοι γε ἔλεγεν Βαβυλώνιος, καὶ παρά γε τοῖς πολίταις οὐχ ἦΟμηρος, ἀλλὰ Τιγράνης καλεῖσθαι· ὕστερον δὲ ὁμηρεύσας παρὰ τοῖς ἥΕλλησιν ἀλλάξαι τὴν προσηγορίαν.

Ἔτι δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἀθετουμένων στίχων ἐπηρώτων, εἰ ὑπ' ἐκείνου εἰσὶ γεγραμμένοι. καὶ ὃς ἔφασκε πάντας αὐτοῦ εἶναι. κατεγίνωσκον οὖν τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν Ζηνόδοτον καὶ Ἀρίσταρχον γραμματικῶν πολλὴν τὴν ψυχρολογίαν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἱκανῶς ἀπεκέκριτο, πάλιν αὐτὸν ἡρώτων τί δὴ ποτε ἀπὸ τῆς μήνιδος τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐποιήσατο· καὶ



παρέχουσι τοῖς βουλομένοις οὐδὲν |contradict,  
|oppose

2.20

|no longer δὺο ἢ τρεῖς ἡμέραι |pierce, traverse , καὶ |come forward, surrender,  
|come in

ἐγὼ Ὀμήρῳ τῷ ποιητῇ, |rest, οὔσης |both , τά τε ἄλλα  
|leisure

ἐπυνθανόμην καὶ |whence , λέγων τοῦτο μάλιστα παρ' ἡμῖν

|still, yet ὅν ζητεῖσθαι. ὁ δὲ οὐδ' αὐτὸς μὲν |be igno-|declare, promise,  
|rant of |think

ὥς οἱ μὲν Χῖον, οἱ δὲ |of myrrh , πολλοὶ δὲ Κολοφώνιον

αὐτὸν νομίζουσιν· εἶναι μέντοι γε ἔλεγεν Βαβυλώνιος,

καὶ παρά γε τοῖς πολίταις οὐχ Ἥομηρος, ἀλλὰ Τιγράνης

καλεῖσθαι· ὕστερον δὲ ὁμηρεύσας παρὰ τοῖς Ἑλλησιν

|trade, ἤν |greeting, name .  
|transform

Ἔτι δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν |renege, cancel |line of|consult, ask , εἰ  
|soldiers,

ὑπ' ἐκείνου εἰσὶ γεγραμμένοι. καὶ ὅς |writing  
|declare, promise, αὐτοῦ  
|think

εἶναι. κατεγίνωσκον οὖν τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν Ζηνόδοτον καὶ

Ἀρίσταρχον |literate;  
|grammar πολλὴν τὴν |nonsense

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἱκανῶς ἀπεκέκριτο, πάλιν αὐτὸν |ask

τί δὴ ποτε ἀπὸ τῆς |rage τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐποιήσατο· καὶ

always submit to them without complaint.

## 2.20

Hardly two or three days had passed before I went up to Homer the poet when we were both at leisure, and questioned him about everything. “Above all,” said I, “where do you come from? This point in particular is being investigated even yet at home.” “I am not unaware,” said he, “that some think me a Chian, some a Smyrniote and many a Colophonian. As a matter of fact, I am a Babylonian, and among my fellow-countrymen my name was not Homer but Tigranes. Later on, when I was a hostage (homeros) among the Greeks, I changed my name.”

I Went on to enquire whether the bracketed lines had been written by him, and he asserted that they were all his own: consequently I held the grammarians Zenodotus and Aristarchus guilty of pedantry in the highest degree.

Since he had answered satisfactorily on these points, I next asked him why he began with the wrath of Achilles; and he said that

*vocabulary*

**ἀλλάσσω** trade, transform  
**ἄλλοτε** at another time ~alien  
**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear  
**ἀρνέομαι** deny, refuse, repudiate  
**βιοτεύω** live, live on  
**γραφεὺς** -ος (m) painter  
**γραφὴ** painting; writing  
**γραφῆς** -οῦ (m, 1) painter  
**ἐκτελέω** complete, bring about  
 ~apostle  
**ἐπέρχομαι** approach, arrive  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station

**ἐπιτηδεύω** practice, pursue  
**ἐπτάκις** 7 times  
**ζῶον** being, animal; picture  
**ἡμίτομος** cut in two  
**περίοδος** picket, circuit  
**πότε** when?  
**πρόθυμος** (ō) willing, eager ~fume  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**σκώπτω** joke  
**συναγορεύω** support  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**τυφλός** blind  
**ὕβρις** -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage

ὃς εἶπεν οὕτως ἐπελθεῖν αὐτῷ μηδὲν ἐπιτηδεύσαντι. καὶ μὴν καὶ κεῖνο ἐπεθύμουν εἰδέναι, εἰ προτέραν ἔγραψεν τὴν Ὀδύσσειαν τῆς Ἰλιάδος, ὥς οἱ πολλοὶ φασιν· ὁ δὲ ἡρνεῖτο.

Ὅτι μὲν γὰρ οὐδὲ τυφλὸς ἦν, ὃ καὶ αὐτὸ περὶ αὐτοῦ λέγουσιν, αὐτίκα ἠπιστάμην· ἑώρα γάρ, ὥστε οὐδὲ πυνθάνεσθαι ἐδεόμην. πολλάκις δὲ καὶ ἄλλοτε τοῦτο ἐποίουν, εἴ ποτε αὐτὸν σχολὴν ἄγοντα ἑώρων· προσίων γὰρ ἄν τι ἐπυνθανόμην αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὃς προθύμως πάντα ἀπεκρίνετο, καὶ μάλιστα μετὰ τὴν δίκην, ἐπειδὴ ἐκράτησεν· ἦν γάρ τις γραφὴ κατ' αὐτοῦ ἀπενηνεγμένη ὕβρεως ὑπὸ Θερσίτου ἐφ' οἷς αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ποιήσει ἔσκωψεν, καὶ ἐνίκησεν ὁ Ἥομηρος Ὀδυσσέως συναγορεύοντος.

## 2.21

Κατὰ δὲ τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους ἀφίκετο καὶ Πυθαγόρας ὁ Σάμιος ἐπτάκις ἀλλαγείς καὶ ἐν τοσούτοις ζώοις βιοτεύσας καὶ ἐκτελέσας τῆς ψυχῆς τὰς περιόδους. ἦν δὲ χρυσοῦς ὅλον τὸ δεξιὸν ἡμίτομον. καὶ ἐκρίθη μὲν

ὅς εἶπεν οὕτως |approach, arrive, αὐτῷ μηδὲν |practice, pursue . καὶ  
 μὴν κακέينو |wish, covet εἰδέναι, εἰ προτέραν ἔγραψεν τὴν  
 Ὀδύσσειαν τῆς Ἰλιάδος, ὡς οἱ πολλοὶ φασιν· ὁ δὲ |deny, refuse .  
 Ὅτι μὲν γὰρ οὐδὲ |blind ἦν, ὁ καὶ αὐτὸ περὶ  
 αὐτοῦ λέγουσιν, αὐτίκα |know ἐώρα γάρ, ὥστε  
 οὐδὲ πυνθάνεσθαι ἐδεόμην. |often δὲ καὶ |at another time  
 τοῦτο ἐποίου, εἴ ποτε αὐτὸν |rest, |leisure ἄγοντα ἐώρων·  
 |approach γὰρ ἂν τι ἐπυνθανόμην αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὅς |willing, |eager  
 πάντα ἀπεκρίνετο, καὶ μάλιστα μετὰ τὴν δίκην, ἐπειδὴ  
 ἐκράτησεν· ἦν γάρ τις γραφὴ κατ' αὐτοῦ |carry off  
 |hubris ὑπὸ Θερσίτου ἐφ' οἷς αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ποιήσει |joke ,  
 καὶ ἐνίκησεν ὁ Ἥομηρος Ὀδυσσέως |support .

## 2.21

Κατὰ δὲ τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους ἀφίκετο καὶ Πυθαγόρας  
 ὁ Σάμιος |7 times |trade, |transform καὶ ἐν τοσούτοις ζώοις  
 |live, live on καὶ |complete τῆς ψυχῆς τὰς |picket, |circuit . ἦν  
 δὲ χρυσοῦς ὅλον τὸ δεξιὸν |cut in two . καὶ ἐκρίθη μὲν

it just came into his head that way, without any study. Moreover, I wanted to know whether he wrote the *Odyssey* before the *Iliad*, as most people say: he said no.

That he was not blind, as they say, I understood at once—I saw it, and so had no need to ask. Often again at other times I would do this when I saw him at leisure; I would go and make enquiries of him and he would give me a cordial answer to everything, particularly after the lawsuit that he won, for a charge of libel had been brought against him by Thersites because of the way he had ridiculed him in the poem, and the case, was won by Homer, with *Odysseus* for his lawyer.

## 2.21

At about this time arrived *Pythagoras* of *Samos* who had undergone seven transformations, had lived in seven bodies and had now ended the migrations of his soul. All his right side was of gold. Judgment was pronounced that he should become a member of their

*vocabulary*

**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place  
 ~agony  
**ἄγωνοθετέω** sponsor games  
**ἄθλον** ἀέθλου prize ~athlete  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**ἑβδομος** seventh  
**ἐνδοιάζω** be in doubt  
**ἐνίστημι** install; threaten; block  
**θανατούσια** a feast of the dead  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**ἵκετεύω** approach to beg  
**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although  
**καταγωνίζομαι** prevail; contend  
**κεφάλαιος** main point; chief  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless

**ὀνομάζω** to address, name ~name  
**ὀπτάω** roast, bake  
**παγκράτιον** 'all-in' contest  
**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas  
**παραδείκνυμι** (ῶ) receive, admit  
**πέμπτος** fifth ~pentagon  
**περίεφθος** well cooked  
**πλέκω** braid ~complex  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**πτερόν** feather, wing ~pterodactyl  
**πτερόω** give wings  
**πυγμή** boxing  
**στέφανος** ring  
**στεφανώ** crown  
**συμπολιτεύω** (ῖ) live alongside  
**συνέρχομαι** come together

συμπολιτεύσασθαι αὐτοῖς, ἐνεδοιάζετο δὲ ἔτι πότερον Πυθαγόραν ἢ Εὐφορβον χρὴ αὐτὸν ὀνομάζειν. ὁ μέντοι Ἐμπεδοκλῆς ἦλθεν μὲν καὶ αὐτός, περιέφθορ καὶ τὸ σῶμα ὅλον ὠπτημένος· οὐ μὴν παρεδέχθη καίτοι πολλὰ ἱκετεύων.

## 2.22

Προϊόντος δὲ τοῦ χρόνου ἐνέστη ὁ ἀγὼν ὁ παρ' αὐτοῖς, τὰ Θανατούσια. ἡγωνοθέτει δὲ Ἀχιλλεὺς τὸ πέμπτον καὶ Θησεὺς τὸ ἑβδομον. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλα μακρὸν ἂν εἶη λέγειν· τὰ δὲ κεφάλαια τῶν πραχθέντων διηγήσομαι. πάλιν μὲν ἐνίκησεν Κάρανος ὁ ἀφ' Ἡρακλέους Ὀδυσσέα περὶ τοῦ στεφάνου καταγωνισάμενος· πυγμῇ δὲ ἴση ἐγένετο Ἀρείου τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου, ὃς ἐν Κορίνθῳ τέθραπται, καὶ Ἐπειοῦ ἀλλήλοις συνελθόντων. παγκρατίου δὲ οὐ τίθεται ἄθλα παρ' αὐτοῖς. τὸν μέντοι δρόμον οὐκέτι μέμνημαι ὅστις ἐνίκησεν. ποιητῶν δὲ τῇ μὲν ἀληθείᾳ παρὰ πολὺ ἐκράτει ἩὈμηρος, ἐνίκησεν δὲ ὅμως Ἡσίοδος. τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦν ἅπασι στέφανος πλακεῖς ἐκ πτερῶν ταωνείων.



συμπολιτεύσασθαι αὐτοῖς, |be in doubt δὲ ἔτι |which,  
 |whichever  
 Πυθαγόραν ἢ Εὐφορβον χρή αὐτὸν |to address, name, ἔντοι  
 Ἐμπεδοκλῆς ἦλθεν μὲν καὶ αὐτός, |well cooked καὶ τὸ  
 σῶμα ὅλον |roast, bake οὐ μὴν παρεδέχθη |and yet; and in  
 |fact; although  
 |approach to beg

## 2.22

|to have been ἔ τοῦ χρόνου |install; ἔ |gathering παρ' αὐτοῖς,  
 |before, earlier |threaten; |place  
 |block  
 τὰ |a feast of the |sponsor οὐδ' Ἀχιλλεύς τὸ |fifth καὶ  
 |dead |games  
 Θησεὺς τὸ |seventh . τὰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλα μακρὸν ἂν εἴη λέγειν·  
 τὰ δὲ κεφάλαια τῶν πραχθέντων |detail, |wrestling ἐν  
 |describe  
 ἐνίκησεν Κάρανος ὁ ἀφ' Ἡρακλέους Ὀδυσσέα περὶ τοῦ  
 στεφάνου |prevail; contend |boxing δὲ ἴση ἐγένετο Ἀρείου  
 τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου, ὃς ἐν Κορίνθῳ |bury , καὶ Ἐπειοῦ  
 ἀλλήλοις |come together . |'all-in' contest ὃ ἐ οὐ τίθεται |prize  
 παρ' αὐτοῖς. τὸν μέντοι |running οὐκέτι μέμνημαι ὅστις  
 ἐνίκησεν. ποιητῶν δὲ τῇ μὲν |truth παρὰ πολὺ ἐκράτει  
 ἢ Ὀμηρος, ἐνίκησεν δὲ |anyway, nevertheless ὃ δὲ |prize ἦν ἅπασι  
 |ring |braid ἐκ πτερῶν ταωνείων.

community, but when I left the point was still at issue whether he ought to be called Pythagoras or Euphorbus. Empedocles came too, all burned and his body completely cooked, but he was not received in spite of his many entreaties.

## 2.22

As time went on their contest came round, the Games of the Dead. The referees were Achilles, serving for the fifth time, and Theseus for the seventh. The full details would make a long story, but I shall tell the principal things that they did. In wrestling the winner was Caranus, the descendant of Heracles, who defeated Odysseus for the championship. The boxing was a draw between Areius the Egyptian, who is buried at Corinth, and Epeius. For combined boxing and wrestling they offer no prizes. In the foot-race I do not remember who won and in poetry, Homer was really far the best man, but Hesiod won. The prize in each case was a crown that was plaited of peacock feathers.



οἷς καὶ ὕστερον ἐξηρέθη αὐτῷ ἀριστεῖον, καλὸς τε καὶ μέγας παράδεισος ἐν τῷ προαστείῳ, ἔνθα καὶ συγκαλὼν τοὺς ἐταίρους διελέγετο, Νεκρακαδημίαν τὸν τόπον προσαγορεύσας. (p. 244)

*vocabulary*

**ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

**ἄγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἀπορρήγνυμι** (ῥ) break off, apart

**ἀριστεῖα** -ου (n, 2) excellence

**ἀριστεῖος** prize for bravery

**ἀριστεύω** be the best ~aristocrat

**ἀσεβέω** be impious

**ἀσεβής** profane

**ἄτρεπτος** unchangeable

**δεσμός** bond, latch, strap; also (pl)

headdress

**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion

**ἐκτάσσω** muster

**ἐξαίρῶ** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

**ἐπικρατέω** rule over

**ἡιὼν** beach

**ἥρω** hero ~hero

**κατορθόω** erect; accomplish

**κολάζω** punish

**παράδεισος** park

**πιτυοκάμπτης** -ου (m, 1) pinebender  
(torturer)

**προάστειον** suburb

**προσαγορεύω** address, call by name

**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσίημι** be allowed near

**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo

**συντελέω** contribute, constitute

**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate

**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid

**φρουρά** guard duty, a watch

**χῶρος** place ~heir

## 2.23-24

Ἄαρτι δὲ τοῦ ἀγῶνος συντετελεσμένου ἡγγέλλοντο οἱ ἐν τῷ χώρῳ τῶν ἀσεβῶν κολαζόμενοι ἀπορρήξαντες τὰ δεσμὰ καὶ τῆς φρουρᾶς ἐπικρατήσαντες ἐλαύνειν ἐπὶ τὴν νῆσον· ἡγεῖσθαι δὲ αὐτῶν Φάλαρίν τε τὸν Ἀκραγαντῖνον καὶ Βούσιριν τὸν Αἰγύπτιον καὶ Διομήδη τὸν Θρᾶκα καὶ τοὺς περὶ Σκείρωνα καὶ Πιτυοκάμπτην. ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ραδάμανθς, ἐκτάσσει τοὺς ἥρωας ἐπὶ τῆς ἡϊόνος· ἡγεῖτο δὲ Θησεύς τε καὶ Ἀχιλλεὺς καὶ Αἴας ὁ Τελαμώνιος ἤδη σωφρονῶν· καὶ συμμίζαντες ἐμάχοντο, καὶ ἐνίκησαν οἱ ἥρωες, Ἀχιλλέως τὰ πλείστα κατορθώσαντος. ἡρίστευσε δὲ καὶ Σωκράτης ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ ταχθεῖς, πολὺ μᾶλλον ἢ ὅτε ζῶν ἐπὶ Δηλῷ ἐμάχετο. προσιόντων γὰρ τεττάρων πολεμίων οὐκ ἔφυγε καὶ τὸ πρόσωπον ἄτρεπτος ἦν· ἐφ' οἷς καὶ ὕστερον ἐξηρέθη αὐτῷ ἀριστεῖον, καλός τε καὶ μέγας παράδεισος ἐν τῷ προαστείῳ, ἔνθα καὶ συγκαλῶν τοὺς ἐταίρους διελέγετο, Νεκρακαδημίαν τὸν τόπον προσαγορεύσας.

2.23-24

Ἄαρτι δὲ τοῦ |gathering |contribute, consti- |carry a message, ἰ  
|place |tute |announce  
ἐν τῷ |place τῶν ἀσεβῶν |punish |break off, apart τὰ  
|bond, καὶ τῆς |guard |rule over ἐλαύνειν ἐπὶ τὴν  
|latch, |duty, a  
|strap |watch  
νήσον· ἡγείσθαι δὲ αὐτῶν Φάλαριν τε τὸν Ἀκραγαντῖνον  
καὶ Βούσιριν τὸν Αἰγύπτιον καὶ Διομήδη τὸν Θρᾶκα  
καὶ τοὺς περὶ Σκείρωνα καὶ |pinebender (tor-, ὥς δὲ  
|turer)  
ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ραδάμανθς, |muster τοὺς |hero  
ἐπὶ τῆς |beach ἡγείτο δὲ Θησεύς τε καὶ Ἀχιλλεὺς καὶ  
Αἴας ὁ Τελαμώνιος ἤδη |be sane, moderate` συμμίζαντες  
ἐμάχοντο, καὶ ἐνίκησαν οἱ |hero , Ἀχιλλέως τὰ πλείστα  
|erect; accomplish . |be the best δὲ καὶ Σωκράτης ἐπὶ τῷ  
δεξιῷ ταχθείς, πολὺ μάλλον ἢ ὅτε ζῶν ἐπὶ Δηλίῳ  
ἐμάχετο. προσιόντων γὰρ |four πολεμίων οὐκ ἔφυγε  
καὶ τὸ πρόσωπον |unchangeable,· ἐφ' οἷς καὶ ὕστερον  
|pick, steal; dedĩ- ἀριστεῖον, καλός τε καὶ μέγας |park  
|cate; destroy  
ἐν τῷ |suburb , ἔνθα καὶ |call together τοὺς ἐταίρους  
|go through, deb̃ate· |καδημίαν τὸν τόπον |address, call by·  
|name

**2.23-24**

Hardly had the games been concluded when word came that those who were under punishment in the place of the wicked had burst their bonds, had overpowered their guard, and were advancing on the island: that they were under the leadership of Phalaris of Acragas, Busiris the Egyptian, Diomed of Thrace, and Sciron and Pityocampes. When Rhadamanthus heard of this he mustered the heroes on the shore. They were led by Theseus, Achilles and Ajax, the son of Telamon, who by this time had recovered his wits. They engaged and fought, and the heroes won. Achilles contributed most to their success, but Socrates, who was stationed on the right wing, was brave, too—far more so than when he fought at Delium in his lifetime. When four of the enemy came at him he did not run away or change countenance. For this they afterwards gave him a special reward, a beautiful great park in the suburbs, where he used to gather his comrades and dispute: he named the place the Academy of the Dead.

Arresting the losers and putting them in irons, they sent them off to be

*vocabulary*

ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp  
 ἄράζω snarl  
 ἄράομαι (ἄα) pray, vow, invoke  
 ἄράω wear something out  
 ἄσιτος (ἰ) not eating ~parasite  
 ἀφανής unseen, occult, obscure  
 βιβλίον paper, book  
 διέρχομαι pierce, traverse  
 ἑβδομος seventh  
 ἕξ six ~hexagon  
 ἑορτή holiday, feast  
 ἐπειδάν when, after  
 ἐπιμανής mad for  
 ἐπινίκιος victorious  
 ἐράω desire sexually  
 ἔψω boil, be boiling

ἥρωξ hero ~hero  
 καθέζομαι act: set, seat; pass: sit  
 down, sit up  
 κατορθόω erect; accomplish  
 κολάζω punish  
 κύαμος bean  
 κυαμοφαγία a diet of beans  
 μεσώω be in the middle  
 μετέχω partake of  
 μυσάσσομαι be disgusted by  
 νέκυς (ὄ) corpse, ghost ~necro  
 ποίημα -τος (n, 3) work, deed  
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far  
 συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
 συνίστημι unite; confront in battle  
 ~station

Συλλαβόντες οὖν τοὺς νενικημένους καὶ δήσαντες ἀπέπεμψαν ἔτι μᾶλλον κολασθησομένους. ἔγραψεν δὲ καὶ ταύτην τὴν μάχην ἣ Ὀμηρος καὶ ἀπιόντι μοι ἔδωκεν τὰ βιβλία κομίζειν τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν ἀνθρώποις· ἀλλ' ὕστερον καὶ ταῦτα μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπωλέσαμεν. ἦν δὲ ἡ ἀρχὴ τοῦ ποιήματος αὕτη, Νῦν δέ μοι ἔννεπε, Μοῦσα, μάχην νεκύων ἡρώων.

Τότε δ' οὖν κυάμους ἐψήσαντες, ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτοῖς νόμος ἐπειδὴν τὸν πόλεμον κατορθώσωσιν, εἰστιῶντο τὰ ἐπινίκια καὶ ἐορτὴν μεγάλην ἡγον· μόνος δὲ αὐτῆς οὐ μετεῖχε Πυθαγόρας, ἀλλ' ἄσιτος πόρρῳ ἐκαθέζετο μυσσάττομενος τὴν κυανοφαγίαν.

## 2.25-27

Ἄηδη δὲ μηνῶν ἕξ διεληλυθότων περὶ μεσοῦντα τὸν ἑβδομον νεώτερα συνίστατο πράγματα· Κινύρας ὁ τοῦ Σκιυθάρου παῖς, μέγας ὢν καὶ καλός, ἦρα πολὺν ἤδη χρόνον τῆς Ἑλένης, καὶ αὐτὴ δὲ οὐκ ἀφανὴς ἦν ἐπιμανῶς



|seize, capture; οὖν τοὺς νενικημένους καὶ δήσαντες  
|understand

|send away ἔτι μᾶλλον |punish . ἔγραψεν δὲ καὶ

ταύτην τὴν μάχην ἣ Ὀμηρος καὶ ἀπιόντι μοι ἔδωκεν τὰ

|paper, book, ἵζειν τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν ἀνθρώποις· ἀλλ' ὕστερον

καὶ ταῦτα μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπωλέσαμεν. ἦν δὲ ἡ ἀρχὴ

τοῦ |work, deed αὕτη, Νῦν δέ μοι ἔννεπε, Μοῦσα, μάχην

|corpse, |hero  
|ghost

Τότε δ' οὖν |bean |boil, be boiling ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτοῖς

νόμος |when, τὸν πόλεμον |erect; accomplish , εἰσιῶντο  
|after

τὰ |victorious καὶ |holiday, μεγάλην ἦγον· μόνος δὲ αὐτῆς  
|feast

οὐ |partake of Τυθαγόρας, ἀλλ' |not |forward, in the ἔιξετο  
|eating |future; far

μυσαττόμενος τὴν |a diet of beans .

## 2.25-27

Ἄηδη δὲ μηνῶν ἕξ |pierce, traverse περὶ |be in the middle

|seventh νεώτερα |unite; confront ἀγμάτα· Κινύρας ὁ τοῦ  
|in battle

Σκινθάρου παῖς, μέγας ὢν καὶ καλός, ἦρα πολὺν ἤδη

χρόνον τῆς Ἑλένης, καὶ αὐτὴ δὲ οὐκ |unseen, ᾧς- ἱπιμανῶς  
|cult, obscure

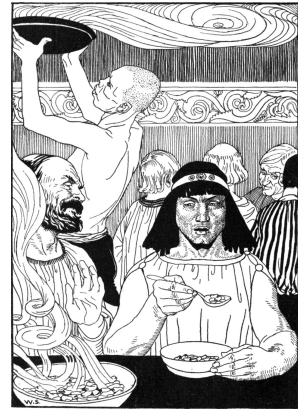
punished still more severely than before. An account of this battle was written by Homer, and as I was leaving he gave me the book to take to the people at home, but later I lost it along with everything else. The poem began:

This time sing me, O Muse, of the shades of the heroes in battle...

But to return—they cooked beans, as is their custom when they are successful at war, had a feast in honour of the victory and made a great holiday. Pythagoras was the only one who did not take part in it; he sat by himself and went dinnerless because he detested beans.

### 2.25-27

Six months had passed and it was about the middle of the seventh when sedition arose. Cinyras, the son of Scintharus, a tall and handsome lad, had long been in love with Helen, and it was no secret that she herself was madly enamoured of



τότε δ' οὖν κυάμους ἐψήσαντες, ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτοῖς νόμος ἐπειδὴν τὸν πόλεμον κατορθώσωσιν, εἰσιτῶντο τὰ ἐπινίκια καὶ ἐορτὴν μεγάλην ἤγον· (p. 252)

*vocabulary*

**ἀμηχανία** helplessness ~mechanism  
**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume  
**ἀνεγείρω** awaken  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**βοά** din, a shout  
**γούν** at least then  
**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out  
**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer  
**ἐπικεῖμαι** impose; shut a door  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand ~station  
**ἔρως** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic  
**εὐνή** bed; (pl) anchor stones  
**ἤτοι** truly; either, or  
**θρασύς** brave, strong  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**κενός** empty, vain  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex  
**κωλύω** (ῶ) hinder, prevent  
**μεσονύκτιος** of/at midnight

**μηνύω** disclose, betray, accuse  
**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas  
**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with  
**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander ~plankton  
**πότε** when?  
**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold, help  
**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope  
**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty, hastily ~repudiate  
**συμπόσιον** drinking party  
**συνωμότης** -ου (m, 1) confederate  
**τυρόεις** (ῶ) cheesy  
**ὕλη** (ῶ) forest, firewood  
**ὕληεις** (ῶ) wooded  
**ὕποφαίνω** show a little ~photon  
**φελλός** cork tree

ἀγαπῶσα τὸν νεανίσκον· πολλάκις γοῦν καὶ διένευον  
 ἀλλήλοις ἐν τῷ συμποσίῳ καὶ προὔπινον καὶ μόνοι  
 ἔξανιστάμενοι ἐπλανῶντο περὶ τὴν ὕλην. καὶ δὴ ποτε ὑπ'  
 ἔρωτος καὶ ἀμηχανίας ἐβουλεύσατο ὁ Κινύρας ἀρπάσας  
 τὴν Ἑλένην ἐδόκει δὲ κάκεινῃ ταῦτα οἷχεσθαι ἀπιόντας  
 ἔς τινα τῶν ἐπικειμένων νήσων, ἥτοι ἐς τὴν Φελλῶ ἢ  
 ἐς τὴν Τυρόεσσαν. συνωμότας δὲ πάλοι προσειλήφεσαν  
 τρεῖς τῶν ἐταίρων τῶν ἐμῶν τοὺς θρασυτάτους. τῷ  
 μέντοι πατρὶ οὐκ ἐμήνυσε ταῦτα· ἡπίστατο γὰρ ὑπ'  
 αὐτοῦ κωλυθησόμενος. ὥς δὲ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς, ἐτέλουν  
 τὴν ἐπιβουλήν. καὶ ἐπειδὴ νύξ ἐγένετο ἐγὼ μὲν οὐ  
 παρήμην· ἐτύγχανον γὰρ ἐν τῷ συμποσίῳ κοιμώμενος οἱ  
 δὲ λαθόντες τοὺς ἄλλους ἀναλαβόντες τὴν Ἑλένην ὑπὸ  
 σπουδῆς ἀνήχθησαν. περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον ἀνεγρόμενος  
 ὁ Μενέλαος ἐπεὶ ἔμαθεν τὴν εὐνὴν κενὴν τῆς γυναικός,  
 βοήν τε ἠφίει καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν παραλαβὼν ἦλθε πρὸς  
 τὸν βασιλέα τὸν Ραδάμανθυν. ἡμέρας δὲ ὑποφαινούσης  
 ἔλεγον οἱ σκοποὶ καθορᾶν τὴν ναῦν πολὺ ἀπέχουσιν·

ἀγαπῶσα τὸν |young man |often |at least then ἰένευον

ἀλλήλοις ἐν τῷ |drinking |party καὶ προὔπινον καὶ μόνοι

|raise, bring/send |lead astray; περὶ τὴν ὕλην. καὶ δὴ ποτε ὑπ' |out (mp) wander

|love, καὶ ἀμυχανίας ἐβουλεύσατο ὁ Κινύρας |carry off, seize |desire

τὴν Ἑλένην ἐδόκει δὲ κακείνη ταῦτα οἷχσθαι ἀπιόντας

ἔς τινα τῶν |impose; shut a door...ν, |truly; ἐς τὴν |cork tree ἢ |either,

ἐς τὴν |cheesy |confederate δὲ <sup>or</sup> πάλαι |add, borrow, take |hold, help

τρεῖς τῶν ἐταίρων τῶν ἐμῶν τοὺς |brave, strong τῷ

μέντοι πατρὶ οὐκ |disclose, be- ἰῦτα· |know γὰρ ὑπ' |tray, accuse

αὐτοῦ |hinder, prevent ὥς δὲ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς, ἐτέλουν

τὴν |a plot, scheme καὶ ἐπειδὴ νύξ ἐγένετο ἐγὼ μὲν οὐ

παρήμην· ἐτύγχανον γὰρ ἐν τῷ |drinking |party κοιμώμενος οἱ

δὲ λαθόντες τοὺς ἄλλους |take up, re- τὴν Ἑλένην ὑπὸ |cover, resume

|zeal; (dat)· with ἦσαν. περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον |awaken |difficulty, hastily

ὁ Μενέλαος ἐπεὶ ἔμαθεν τὴν |bed; |empty, vain γυναικός, |anchor (pl)

βοήν τε ἠφίει καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν |receive, undertake, εἰ πρὸς |stones associate with

τὸν βασιλέα τὸν Ραδάμανθυν. ἡμέρας δὲ |show a little

ἔλεγον οἱ |lookout |look down ἣν ναῦν πολὺ |ward off, drive off, refrain, be |at some distance

the boy. For instance, they often winked to one another at table, drank to each other and got up together and wandered about the wood. Well, one fine day through love and despair Cinyras determined to rape Helen—she agreed to it—and go to one of the islands in the offing, either Cork or Cheesie. As accomplices they had long ago taken on three of the most reckless of my comrades; but Cinyras did not inform his father, for he knew that he would not let him do it. When they had come to a decision, they carried out their stratagem. It was at nightfall, and I was not on hand, as I chanced to be taking a nap under the table. Without the knowledge of the rest they carried Helen off and put to sea in haste. About midnight, when Menelaus woke up, and found that his wife was not in bed, he made a great stir and took his brother and went to King Rhadamanthus. But as day began to break the lookouts said that they saw the ship far out at sea. Then Rhadamanthus

*vocabulary*

αἰδοῖον genitals  
 αἰδοῖος modest, honored  
 αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar  
 ἄλυσις -εως (f) chain  
 ἀλύσκω avoid, be a shirker ~swelter  
 ἀλύω be beside oneself  
 ἀναδέω wreath, tie  
 ἀνακρίνω interrogate, examine  
 ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp  
 ἄρτι at the same time  
 ἀσεβέω be impious  
 ἀσεβής profane  
 ἀσφοδέλινος of asphodel  
 γαλακτώδης milk-warm  
 δακρύω weep  
 διαδιδράσκω escape  
 ἐγκαλύπτω veil, hide  
 ἐκπέμπω send forth ~pomp  
 ἐμβαίνω step on, board ~basis  
 ἐμβιβάζω put aboard  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπιμένω wait, stay ~remain  
 ἥρως hero ~hero

θρόνος seat, chair, throne ~throne  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon  
 καταπλέω land ~float  
 κλισία hut, tent ~incline  
 μαλάχη mallow  
 μαστιγώω (ι) whip  
 μεσημβρία midday; the south  
 μονόξυλος canoe  
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
 παραμυθέομαι (ῶ) urge, advise  
 πλανάω lead astray; (mp) wander  
 ~plankton  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 ποτνιαόμαι shriek  
 προθυμία (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume  
 ῥόδινος of roses  
 σύνοιδα know about someone; think proper  
 τυρόεις (ῶ) cheesy  
 χώρος place ~heir  
 ψηφίζω count, vote  
 ὠκεανός ocean

οὕτω δὴ ἐμβιβάσας ὁ Ραδάμανθς πεντήκοντα τῶν  
 ἡρώων εἰς ναῦν μονόξυλον ἀσφοδελίνην παρήγγειλε  
 διώκειν· οἱ δὲ ὑπὸ προθυμίας ἐλαύνοντες περὶ μεσημβρίαν  
 καταλαμβάνουσιν αὐτοὺς ἄρτι ἐς τὸν γαλακτώδη τοῦ  
 ὠκεανοῦ τόπον ἐμβαίνοντας πλησίον τῆς Τυροέσσης·  
 παρὰ τοσοῦτον ἦλθον διαδρᾶναι· καὶ ἀναδησάμενοι τὴν  
 ναῦν ἀλύσει ροδίνῃ κατέπλεον. ἡ μὲν οὖν Ἑλένη ἐδάκρυν  
 τε καὶ ἡσχύνετο καὶ ἐνεκαλύπτετο, τοὺς δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸν  
 Κινύραν ἀνακρίνας πρότερον ὁ Ραδάμανθς, εἴ τινες  
 καὶ ἄλλοι αὐτοῖς συνίσασιν, ὥς οὐδένα εἶπον, ἐκ τῶν  
 αἰδοίων δήσας ἀπέπεμψεν ἐς τὸν τῶν ἀσεβῶν χῶρον  
 μαλάχῃ πρότερον μαστιγωθέντας. ἐψηφίσαντο δὲ καὶ  
 ἡμᾶς ἐμπροθέσμους ἐκπέμπειν ἐκ τῆς νήσου, τὴν ἐπιούσαν  
 ἡμέραν μόνην ἐπιμείναντας.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐγὼ ἐποτνιώμην τε καὶ ἐδάκρουν οἶα ἔμελλον  
 ἀγαθὰ καταλιπὼν αὐθις πλανήσεσθαι. αὐτοὶ μέντοι  
 παρεμυθοῦντο λέγοντες οὐ πολλῶν ἐτῶν ἀφίξεσθαι πάλιν  
 ὥς αὐτούς, καί μοι ἤδη εἰς τοῦπιόν θρόνον τε καὶ κλισίαν



οὕτω δὴ |put aboard ὁ Ραδάμανθς πεντήκοντα τῶν

ἡρώων εἰς ναῦν |canoe |of asphodel |transmit; order, summon,  
|recommend, encourage

διώκειν· οἱ δὲ ὑπὸ προθυμίας ἐλαύνοντες περὶ |midday; the south

|seize, understand, catch, over-|at the same time|milk-warm τοῦ  
|take; (mp) happen

|ocean τόπον |step on, board πλησίον τῆς |cheesy

παρὰ τοσοῦτον ἦλθον |escape καὶ |wreath, tie τὴν

ναῦν ἀλύσει |of roses |land . ἡ μὲν οὖν Ἑλένη |weep

τε καὶ |spoil, καὶ |veil, hide , τοὺς δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸν  
|disgrace

Κινύραν |interrogate, πρότερον ὁ Ραδάμανθς, εἴ τινες  
|examine

καὶ ἄλλοι αὐτοῖς |know about some-ὑδένᾳ εἶπον, ἐκ τῶν  
|one; think proper

αἰδοίων δήσας |send away ἐς τὸν τῶν ἀσεβῶν |place

|mallow πρότερον |whip . |count, vote δὲ καὶ

ἡμᾶς ἐμπροθέσμους ἐκπέμπειν ἐκ τῆς νήσου, τὴν ἐπιούσαν

ἡμέραν μόνην |wait, stay .

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐγὼ |shriek τε καὶ |weep οἶα ἔμελλον

ἀγαθὰ καταλιπὼν αὐθις |lead astray; αὐτοὶ μέντοι  
|(mp) wander

|παραμυθέομαι?: ὑρge, advise; or ἁλλῶν ἐτῶν ἀφίξεσθαι πάλιν  
|παραμυθέομαι?: urge, advise

ὥς αὐτούς, καί μοι ἤδη εἰς τοῦπιόν θρόνον τε καὶ κλισίαν

put fifty of the heroes aboard a ship made of a single log of asphodel and ordered them to give chase. Rowing with a will, they overtook them about noon, just as they were entering the milky place in the ocean near Cheesie—that is all they lacked of escaping! Securing the ship with a hawser of roses, they sailed home. Helen cried and hid her head for shame. As to Cinyras and the rest, first Rhadamanthus asked them if they had any other accomplices, and they said no; then he had them secured by the offending member and sent them away to the place of the wicked, after they had been first scourged with mallow. The heroes voted, too, that we be dismissed from the island before our time was up, remaining only till the next day.

Thereupon I began to cry aloud and weep because I had to leave such blessings behind me and resume my wanderings. But they cheered me up, saying that before many years I should come back to them again, and they even pointed out to me my future

*vocabulary*

ἄμικτος unmixed  
 ἀνασπάω draw again ~spatula  
 ἀριθμός number  
 ἀσεβέω be impious  
 ἀσεβής profane  
 δείκνυμι (ὑ) show, point out  
 διέρχομαι pierce, traverse  
 ἕκτος sixth ~hexagon  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐπάνοδος (f) return; recap  
 ἐπειδὴν when, after  
 ἐπιδείκνυμι (ὑ) display, exhibit  
 ἐπιδημέω inhabit; visit  
 ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent  
 ἱκετεύω approach to beg  
 καίω burn ~caustic  
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that  
 μαλάχη mallow  
 ὄνειρον dream  
 ὄνειρος dream  
 οὐδέπω not, not yet  
 παραπλέω sail past ~float  
 πλανάω lead astray; (mp) wander  
 ~plankton  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 ποικίλος ornamented; various  
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
 προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
 πρόσωθεν forward, in the future; far  
 ὑποδείκνυμι (υὑ) show, trace out  
 φάσκω declare, promise, think ~fame

ἐπεδείκνυσαν πλησίον τῶν ἀρίστων. ἐγὼ δὲ προσελθὼν τῷ Ραδαμάνθῳι πολλὰ ἰκέτευον εἰπεῖν τὰ μέλλοντα καὶ ὑποδείξαί μοι τὸν πλοῦν. ὁ δὲ ἔφασκεν ἀφίξεσθαι μὲν εἰς τὴν πατρίδα πολλὰ πρότερον πλανηθέντα καὶ κινδυνεύσαντα, τὸν δὲ χρόνον οὐκέτι τῆς ἐπανόδου προσθεῖναι ἠθέλησεν· ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ δεικνὺς τὰς πλησίον νήσους ἐφαίνοντο δὲ πέντε τὸν ἀριθμόν, ἄλλη δὲ ἕκτη πόρρωθεν ταύτας μὲν εἶναι ἔφασκεν τῶν ἀσεβῶν, τὰς πλησίον, «Ἄφ' ὧν,» ἔφη, «ἤδη τὸ πολὺ πῦρ ὀρώς καιόμενον, ἕκτη δὲ ἐκείνη τῶν ὀνείρων ἢ πόλις· μετὰ ταύτην δὲ ἡ τῆς Καλυψούς νήσος, ἀλλ' οὐδέπω σοι φαίνεται. ἐπειδὰν δὲ ταύτας παραπλεύσης, τότε δὴ ἀφίξῃ εἰς τὴν μεγάλην ἡπειρον τὴν ἐναντίαν τῇ ὑφ' ὧν κατοικουμένη· ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὰ παθὼν καὶ ποικίλα ἔθνη διελθὼν καὶ ἀνθρώποις ἀμίκτοις ἐπιδημήσας χρόνῳ ποτὲ ἤξεις εἰς τὴν ἐτέραν ἡπειρον.»

## 2.28-39

Τοσαῦτα εἶπεν, καὶ ἀνασπάσας ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς μαλάχης

|display, exhibit |near τῶν ἀρίστων. ἐγὼ δὲ |come forward, surrender,  
|come in

τῷ Ραδαμάνθι πολλά |approach to beg τὰ μέλλοντα καὶ

|show, trace μοι τὸν πλοῦν. ὁ δὲ |declare, promise, think  
|out

μὲν εἰς τὴν πατρίδα πολλά πρότερον |lead astray; καὶ  
|(mp) wander

|encounter danger; (+inf) δὲ χρόνον οὐκέτι τῆς |return;  
|there is a danger that |recap

|add; impose; (mp) |σεν· ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ |show τὰς |near  
|agree; side with

νήσους ἐφαίνοντο δὲ πέντε τὸν |number , ἄλλη δὲ ἕκτη

|forward, in the ὕτας μὲν εἶναι |declare, promise, |σεβῶν, τὰς  
|future; far |think

|near , «Ἄφ' ὧν,» ἔφη, «ἤδη τὸ πολὺ πῦρ ὀράς

|burn , ἕκτη δὲ ἐκείνη τῶν ὀνείρων ἡ πόλις· μετὰ

ταύτην δὲ ἡ τῆς Καλυψοῦς νῆσος, ἀλλ' |not, not yet μ

φαίνεται. |when, δὲ ταύτας |sail past , τότε δὴ  
|after

ἀφίξῃ εἰς τὴν μεγάλην |mainland, ἣν ἐναντίαν τῇ ὑφ' ὑμῶν  
|continent

κατοικουμένη· |there, here· |πολλά παθὼν καὶ |ornamented ἡ

|pierce, καὶ ἀνθρώποις |unmixed |inhabit; visit χρόνῳ ποτὲ  
|traverse

ἥξεις εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν |mainland,  
|continent

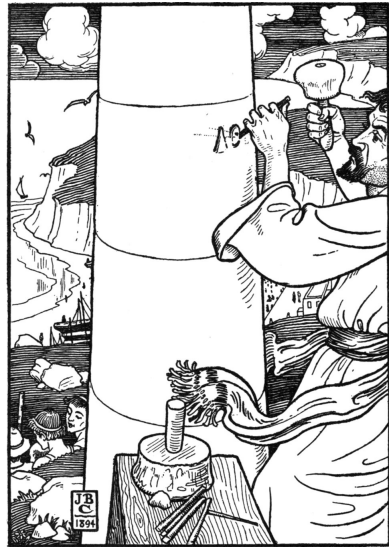
## 2.28-39

Τοσαῦτα εἶπεν, καὶ |draw again ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς |mallow

chair and couch, close to the best people. I went to Rhadamanthus and earnestly besought him to tell me what would happen and indicate my course. He said that I should reach my native land in spite of many wanderings and dangers, but refused to tell the time of my return. However, pointing out the islands near by — there were five in sight and a sixth in the distance —, “These,” said he, “are the Isles of the Wicked, here close at hand, from which you see all the smoke arising: the sixth yonder is the City of Dreams. Next comes the island of Calypso, but you cannot see it yet. When you have sailed by these, you will finally come to the great continent opposite the one which your people inhabit. Then at last, after you have had many adventures and have travelled through all sorts of countries and lived among unfriendly men, in course of time you will reach the other continent.”

### 2.28-39

With these words he plucked a root of mallow from the ground



στήλην βηρύλλου λίθου ἀναστήσας ἐπέγραψα πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. (p. 264)

*vocabulary*

ἄφιξις -τος (f) arrival  
 βήρυλλος beryl  
 δίστιχος of two lines  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπίγραμμα -τος (n, 3) inscription, title,  
 maker's signature  
 ἐπιγράφω scratch, graze ~photograph  
 ἐπιστολή message, letter  
 ἥρως hero ~hero  
 θέρμος lupine  
 λάθρα secretly  
 λίθος (f) stone ~monolith  
 λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge  
 ~limnic  
 μάχαιρα knife, dagger

ὀκτωκαίδεκα 18

ὀρέγω hold out, offer, thrust ~reach  
 παραινέω recommend, exhort, warn  
 παραπέμπω send via; escort ~pomp  
 πλησιάζω bring/be near; have sex  
 ποιητής -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author  
 ποιητός made, well-made ~poet  
 πότε when?  
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
 προσεύχομαι pray, vow  
 ῥίζα root ~rhizome  
 σκαλεύω stir, poke  
 στήλη post, column  
 τοιόσδε such

ρίζαν ὄρεξέν μοι, ταύτη κελεύσας ἐν τοῖς μεγίστοις  
κινδύνοις προσεύχεσθαι· παρήνεσε δὲ εἰ καὶ ποτε  
ἀφικοίμην ἐς τήνδε τὴν γῆν, μήτε πῦρ μαχαίρα σκαλεύειν  
μήτε θέρμους ἐσθίειν μήτε παιδὶ ὑπὲρ τὰ ὀκτωκαῖδεκα ἔτη  
πλησιάζειν· τούτων γὰρ ἂν μεμνημένον ἐλπίδας ἔχειν τῆς  
εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἀφίξεως.

Τότε μὲν οὖν τὰ περὶ τὸν πλοῦν παρεσκευασάμην, καὶ  
ἐπεὶ καιρὸς ἦν, συνεισιτώμην αὐτοῖς. τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ  
ἐλθὼν πρὸς Ἡομηρον τὸν ποιητὴν ἐδεήθην αὐτοῦ ποιῆσαί  
μοι δίστιχον ἐπίγραμμα· καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἐποίησεν, στήλην  
βηρύλλου λίθου ἀναστήσας ἐπέγραψα πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. τὸ  
δὲ ἐπίγραμμα ἦν τοιόνδε·

Λουκιανὸς τάδε πάντα φίλος μακάρεσσι θεοῖσινεῖδέ τε καὶ  
πάλιν ἦλθε φίλην ἐς πατρίδα γαῖαν.

Μείνας δὲ κακέκινεν τὴν ἡμέραν, τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἀνηγόμενην  
τῶν ἡρώων παραπεμπόντων. ἔνθα μοι καὶ Ὀδυσσεὺς  
προσελθὼν λάθρα τῆς Πηνελόπης δίδωσιν ἐπιστολὴν εἰς



|root |hold out, of- ι, ταύτη κελεύσας ἐν τοῖς μεγίστοις  
|fer, thrust

κινδύνοις |pray, vow |recommend, δὲ εἰ καὶ ποτε  
|exhort, warn

ἀφικοίμην ἐς τήνδε τὴν γῆν, μήτε πῦρ |knife |stir, poke

μήτε |lupine ἐσθίειν μήτε παιδὶ ὑπὲρ τὰ |18 ἔτη

|bring/be near; οὐτών γὰρ ἂν μεμνημένον ἐλπίδας ἔχειν τῆς  
|have sex

εἰς τὴν νῆσον |arrival

Τότε μὲν οὖν τὰ περὶ τὸν πλοῦν παρεσκευασάμην, καὶ

ἐπεὶ καιρὸς ἦν, συνεισιτώμην αὐτοῖς. τῇ δὲ |lie upon; approach

ἐλθὼν πρὸς Ἡομήρον τὸν ποιητὴν ἐδεήθην αὐτοῦ ποιῆσαί

μοι |of two lines|inscription, title, ἐπειδὴ ἐποίησεν, |post,  
|maker's signature |column

|beryl |stone ἀναστήσας |graze πρὸς τῷ |harbor, τὸ  
|refuge

δὲ |inscription, ὅτι |such  
|title, maker's  
|signature

Λουκιανὸς τάδε πάντα φίλος μακάρεσσι θεοῖσινεῖδέ τε καὶ

πάλιν ἦλθε φίλην ἐς πατρίδα γαῖαν.

Μείνας δὲ κακείνην τὴν ἡμέραν, τῇ |lie upon; approach ,ν

τῶν |hero |send via; escort ἔνθα μοι καὶ Ὀδυσσεὺς

|come forward,|secretly τῆς Πηνελόπης δίδωσιν |message, εἰς  
|surrender, |letter  
|come in

and handed it to me, telling me to pray to it in my greatest straits. And he advised me if ever I reached this country, neither to stir the fire with a sword-blade nor to eat lupines nor to make love to anyone over eighteen, saying that if I bore these points in mind I might have good hopes of getting back to the island.

Well, I made preparations for the voyage, and when the time came, joined them at the feast. On the next day I went to the poet Homer and begged him to compose me a couplet to carve up, and when he had done so, I set up a slab of beryl near the harbour and had the couplet carved on it. It was:

One Lucian, whom the blessed gods befriend, Beheld what's here, and home again did wend.

I Stayed that day, too, and put to sea on the next, escorted by the heroes. At that juncture Odysseus came to me without the knowledge of Penelope and gave

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἀέρος (ἄ, m) mist, air ~air  
**ἀκανθώδης** thorny  
**ἀμορφία** formlessness  
**ἀνέρω** creep upward  
**ἀπόξυρος** cut sharp off  
**ἄσφαλτος** (f) asphalt, bitumen  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἀτραπός** ἀταρπιτοῦ (f) trail  
**ἀφόρητος** unendurable; irresistible  
**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate  
**δένδρον** tree  
**διαδέχομαι** be next, succeed ~doctrine  
**δρόσος** (f) dew, pure water  
**εἰρκτή** prison  
**ἐμπορία** commerce  
**ἔνιμι** be in ~ion  
**ἐπιβαίνω** (+gen) set foot on, board,  
 climb ~basis  
**εὐώδης** fragrant  
**ζοφερός** gloomy, dusky  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κατάγω** lead down/home; land  
 ~demagogue  
**καταπλέω** land ~float  
**καταστάζω** shed, drip  
**κολαστήριος** punitive

**κρημνός** riverside cliff  
**κρημνώδης** precipitous  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**μάστιξ** -γος (f) whip  
**μεστός** full  
**οἰμωγή** wailing  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὀπτάω** roast, bake  
**ὀσμή** smell ~osmium, odor  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πίσσα** pitch, resin ~pitch  
**πίσσινος** made of pitch  
**πορθμεύς** -ος (m) ferryman ~pierce  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**προΐημι** send forth, abandon  
**προσέχω** direct to; think about  
**σκόλοψ** -πος (m) palisade, stake  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**φύσις** -εως (f) nature (of a thing)  
 ~physics  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**ψόφος** noise

Ὡγγυγίαν τὴν νήσον Καλυψοῖ κομίζειν. συνέπεμψε δέ μοι ὁ  
 Ραδάμανθυς τὸν πορθμέα Ναύπλιον, ἵν' ἐὰν καταχθείμεν  
 ἐς τὰς νήσους, μηδεὶς ἡμᾶς συλλάβῃ ἅτε κατ' ἄλλην  
 ἐμπορίαν καταπλέοντας.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν εὐώδη ἀέρα προϊόντες παρεληλύθειμεν,  
 αὐτίκα ἡμᾶς ὁσμὴ τε δεινὴ διεδέχετο οἶον ἀσφάλτου  
 καὶ θείου καὶ πίττης ἅμα καιομένων, καὶ κνῖσα δὲ  
 πονηρὰ καὶ ἀφόρητος ὥσπερ ἀνθρώπων ὀπτωμένων,  
 καὶ ὁ ἀῆρ ζοφερός καὶ ὀμιχλώδης, καὶ κατέσταζεν  
 ἐξ αὐτοῦ δρόσος πιπτίνῃ· ἠκούομεν δὲ καὶ μαστίγων  
 ψόφον καὶ οἰμωγὴν ἀνθρώπων πολλῶν. ταῖς μὲν οὖν  
 ἄλλαις οὐ προσέσχομεν, ἥς δὲ ἐπέβημεν, τοιάδε ἦν·  
 κύκλω μὲν πᾶσα κρημνώδης καὶ ἀπόξυρος, πέτραις καὶ  
 τράχωσι κατεσκληκυῖα, δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν οὐδὲ ὕδωρ ἐνῆν·  
 ἀνερπύσαντες δὲ ὅμως κατὰ τοὺς κρημνοὺς προήειμεν  
 διὰ τινος ἀκανθώδους καὶ σκολόπων μεστῆς ἀτραποῦ,  
 πολλὴν ἀμορφίαν τῆς χώρας ἐχούσης. ἐλθόντες δὲ ἐπὶ  
 τὴν εἶρκτὴν καὶ τὸ κολαστήριον, πρῶτα μὲν τὴν φύσιν  
 τοῦ τόπου ἐθαυμάζομεν· τὸ μὲν

Ὠγυγίαν τὴν νῆσον Καλυψοῖ κομίζειν. |send with δέ μοι ὁ  
 Ραδάμανθυσ τὸν |ferryman Ναύπλιον, ἵν' ἐὰν |lead down/home; land  
 ἐς τὰς νήσους, μηδεὶς ἡμᾶς συλλάβῃ ἄτε κατ' ἄλλην  
 |commerce καταπλέοντας.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν |fragrant ἀέρα |to have been ἀρεληλύθειμεν,  
 |before, earlier  
 αὐτίκα ἡμᾶς |smell τε δεινὴ |be next, succeed ἀσφάλτου  
 καὶ θείου καὶ |pitch ἅμα καιομένων, καὶ κνῖσα δὲ  
 πονηρὰ καὶ |unendurable; ὥσπερ ἀνθρώπων |roast, bake ,  
 |irresistible  
 καὶ ὁ ἀῆρ |gloomy, καὶ ὀμιχλώδης, καὶ |shed, drip  
 |dusky  
 ἐξ αὐτοῦ |dew, pure|made of pitch ὕομεν δὲ καὶ |whip  
 |water  
 |noise καὶ |wailing ἀνθρώπων πολλῶν. ταῖς μὲν οὖν  
 ἄλλαις οὐ προσέσχομεν, ἧς δὲ ἐπέβημεν, τοιάδε ἦν·  
 |circle, μὲν πᾶσα |precipitous καὶ |cut sharp off γέτραις καὶ  
 |wheel  
 τράχωσι κατεσκληκυῖα, δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν οὐδὲ ὕδωρ ἐνῆν·  
 |creep upward δὲ ὅμως κατὰ τοὺς |riverside προήειμεν  
 |cliff  
 διὰ τινος |thorny καὶ |palisade, |full |trail ,  
 |stake  
 πολλὴν |formlessness ἧς χώρας ἐχούσης. ἐλθόντες δὲ ἐπὶ  
 τὴν |prison καὶ τὸ |punitive , πρῶτα μὲν τὴν φύσιν  
 τοῦ τόπου ἐθαυμάζομεν· τὸ μὲν

me a letter to carry to Ogygia Island, to Calypso. Rhadamanthus sent the pilot Nauplius with me, so that if we touched at the islands no one might arrest us, thinking we were putting in on another errand.

Forging ahead, we had passed out of the fragrant atmosphere when of a sudden a terrible odour greeted-us as of asphalt, sulphur, and pitch burning together, and a vile, insufferable stench as of roasting human flesh: the atmosphere was murky and foggy, and a pitchy dew distilled from it. Likewise we heard the noise of scourges and the wailing of many men. The other islands we did not touch at, but the one on which we landed was precipitous and sheer on all sides; it was roughened with rocks and stony places, and there was neither tree nor water in it. We crawled up the cliffs, however, and went ahead in a path full of thorns and calthrops, finding the country very ugly. On coming to the enclosure and the place of punishment, first of all we wondered at the nature of the region.

*vocabulary*

αἰδοῖον genitals  
 αἰδοῖος modest, honored  
 ἄνθραξ -κος (m) coal; abscess  
 ἀπαρτάω hang; detach  
 ἀπέρατος uncrossable, boundless  
 βίος life ~biology  
 βόρβορος mud, filth  
 γνωρίζω make known, discover  
 δαλός (ᾱ) fire-brand  
 ἔδαφος -ους (n, 3) ground, floor  
 ~edifice  
 εἴσοδος (f) entrance ~odometer  
 ἐνδον in the house of; within  
 ἐνιοι some  
 ἐξανθέω bloom, be past blooming  
 ἔρρω go (neg. connotation) ~serve  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
 ἰδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman  
 ἰχθύς -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
 καθηγέομαι lead  
 καπνός smoke  
 κολάζω punish  
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle

κυματώ (ῶ) cover with waves  
 λυχνίσκος small lamp  
 μάχαιρα knife, dagger  
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless  
 παντῇ everywhere  
 παρέρχομαι pass, escape  
 περιηγητής -οῦ (m, 1) guide  
 περιρρέω flow around ~rheostat  
 προσέοικα resemble  
 προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
 πυλωρός gatekeeper  
 πυρόω burn something  
 ῥέζω do, make, perform sacrifices  
 ~ergonomics  
 ῥέω flow ~rheostat  
 σκόλοψ -πος (m) palisade, stake  
 στενός narrow  
 συγγράφω write down  
 τιμωρία (τι) vengeance, punishment  
 ὑπείμι be under  
 ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain  
 χρηστός useful; brave, worthy  
 ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

γὰρ ἔδαφος αὐτὸ μαχαίραις καὶ σκόλοιφι πάντῃ ἐξηνθήκει,  
 κύκλῳ δὲ ποταμοὶ περιέρρεον, ὁ μὲν βορβόρου, ὁ δὲ  
 δεύτερος αἵματος, ὁ δὲ ἔνδον πυρός, πάνυ μέγας οὗτος καὶ  
 ἀπέρατος, καὶ ἔρρει ὥσπερ ὕδωρ καὶ ἐκυματοῦτο ὥσπερ  
 θάλαττα, καὶ ἰχθῦς δὲ εἶχεν πολλούς, τοὺς μὲν δαλοῖς  
 προσεοικότας, τοὺς δὲ μικροὺς ἄνθραξι πεπυρωμένοις·  
 ἐκάλουν δὲ αὐτοὺς λυχνίσκους. εἵσοδος δὲ μία στενὴ διὰ  
 πάντων ἦν, καὶ πυλωρὸς ἐφειστήκει Τίμων ὁ Ἀθηναῖος.  
 παρελθόντες δὲ ὅμως τοῦ Ναυπλίου καθηγουμένου  
 ἐωρῶμεν κολαζομένους πολλοὺς μὲν βασιλέας, πολλοὺς  
 δὲ καὶ ἰδιώτας, ὧν ἐνίους καὶ ἐγνωρίζομεν· εἶδομεν δὲ  
 καὶ τὸν Κινύραν καπνῷ ὑποτυφόμενον ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων  
 ἀπηρτημένον. προσετίθεσαν δὲ οἱ περιηγηταὶ καὶ τοὺς  
 ἐκάστων βίους καὶ τὰς ἀμαρτίας ἐφ' αἷς κολάζονται· καὶ  
 μεγίστας ἀπασῶν τιμωρίας ὑπέμενον οἱ ψευδάμενοί τι  
 παρὰ τὸν βίον καὶ οἱ μὴ τὰ ἀληθῆ συγγεγραφότες, ἐν οἷς  
 καὶ Κτησίας ὁ Κνίδιος ἦν καὶ Ἡρόδοτος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοί.  
 τούτους οὖν ὁρῶν ἐγὼ χρηστὰς εἶχον εἰς



γὰρ |ground, |floor αὐτὸ |knife καὶ |palisade, |stake |every- |where |bloom, be past  
 |circle, |wheel δὲ ποταμοὶ |flow around , ὁ μὲν |mud, filth , ὁ δὲ  
 δεύτερος αἵματος, ὁ δὲ |in the house; |of; within πάννυ μέγας οὗτος καὶ  
 |uncrossable, |boundless καὶ ἔρρει ὥσπερ ὕδωρ καὶ |cover with waves |τερ  
 θάλαττα, καὶ |fish δὲ εἶχεν πολλούς, τοὺς μὲν |fire-brand  
 |resemble , τοὺς δὲ μικροὺς |coal; |abscess |burn something  
 ἐκάλουν δὲ αὐτοὺς |small lamp . |entrance δὲ μία |narrow διὰ  
 πάντων ἦν, καὶ |gatekeeper ἐφειστήκει Τίμων ὁ Ἀθηναῖος.  
 παρελθόντες δὲ ὅμως τοῦ Ναυπλίου καθηγουμένου  
 ἐωρῶμεν |punish πολλοὺς μὲν βασιλέας, πολλοὺς  
 δὲ καὶ |private; a |lay-|some καὶ |make known, discover |δὲ  
 |man καὶ τὸν Κινύραν |smoke ὑποτυφόμενον ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων  
 ἀπηρτημένον. προσετίθεσαν δὲ οἱ |guide καὶ τοὺς  
 ἐκάστων βίους καὶ τὰς ἀμαρτίας ἐφ' αἷς |punish καὶ  
 μεγίστας ἀπασῶν τιμωρίας ὑπέμενον οἱ |be false, deceive;  
 |write down (mid) to lie , ἐν οἷς  
 καὶ Κτησίας ὁ Κνίδιος ἦν καὶ Ἡρόδοτος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοί.  
 τούτους οὖν ὁρῶν ἐγὼ |useful; brave, |worthy ἐν εἰς

The ground itself was all sown with sword blades and calthrops, and around it flowed three rivers, one of mud, the second of blood and the inmost one of fire. The latter was very large, and impossible to cross: it ran like water and undulated like the sea, and it contained many fish, some similar to torches, and some, a smaller variety, to live coals. They called them candlefish. There was a single narrow way leading in, past all the rivers, and the warder set there was Timon of Athens. We got through, however, and with Nauplius for our conductor we saw many kings undergoing punishment, and many commoners too. Some of them we even recognized, and we saw Cinyras triced up as aforesaid in the smoke of a slow fire. The guides told the life of each, and the crimes for which they were being punished; and the severest punishment of all fell to those who told lies while in life and those who had written what was not true, among whom were Ctesias of Cnidos, Herodotus and many more. On seeing them, I had good hopes for the future,



κύκλω μὲν περὶ πᾶσαν αὐτὴν ὕλη ἀνέστηκεν, τὰ δένδρα δὲ ἔστι μήκωνες ὕψηλαὶ  
καὶ μανδραγόραι (p. 276)

*vocabulary*

ἀκριβής (ῑ) exact  
 ἀμυδρός obscure, vague  
 ἀναστρέφω act; overturn; mid: find  
 oneself in ~atrophy  
 ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
 ἀποπλέω sail away ~float  
 ἀσαφής faint, obscure  
 ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute  
 δείλη afternoon ~diem  
 δένδρον tree  
 εἰσπλέω sail into  
 ἐλεφάντινος of ivory  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπιμνήσκωμαι remember, speak  
 about ~mnemonic  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle  
 λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge  
 ~limnic  
 μανδραγόρας mandrake  
 μήκων poppy  
 ὄνειρον dream

ὄνειρος dream  
 ὄψιος late, in evening  
 ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view  
 ~thanatopsis  
 παραπλήσιος similar to  
 παρέρχομαι pass, escape  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 ποικίλος ornamented; various  
 πορρωτέρω farther  
 πότε when?  
 προσαγορεύω address, call by name  
 πρόσσειμι approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
 προσίημι be allowed near  
 πύλη gate ~Thermopylae  
 συγγράφω write down  
 συνεπίσταμαι be privy to  
 ὕλη (ῑ) forest, firewood  
 ὑποβαίνω stand/go under; (pf) fall  
 under the head of  
 ὑποφεύγω flee before ~fugitive  
 ὑποχωρέω recoil ~heir  
 ὑψηλός high  
 ψεῦδος -ους (n, 3) a lie ~pseudo-

τοῦπιόν τὰς ἐλπίδας· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἑμαυτῷ ψευδὸς εἰπόντι  
 συνηπιστάμην. ταχέως δ' οὖν ἀναστρέψας ἐπὶ τὴν ναῦν  
 οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡδυνάμην φέρειν τὴν ὄψιν— ἀσπασάμενος τὸν  
 Ναύπλιον ἀπέπλευσα.

Καὶ μετ' ὀλίγον ἐφαίνετο πλησίον ἢ τῶν ὀνείρων νῆσος,  
 ἀμυδρὰ καὶ ἀσαφὴς ἰδεῖν· ἔπασχε δὲ καὶ αὐτὴ τι τοῖς  
 ὀνείροις παραπλήσιον· ὑπεχώρει γὰρ προσιόντων ἡμῶν  
 καὶ ὑπέφευγε καὶ πορρωτέρω ὑπέβαινε. καταλαβόντες  
 δέ ποτε αὐτὴν καὶ εἰσπλεύσαντες εἰς τὸν Ἥϊπνον λιμένα  
 προσαγορευόμενον πλησίον τῶν πυλῶν τῶν ἐλεφαντίνων,  
 ἥ τὸ τοῦ Ἀλεκτρυόνης ἱερόν ἐστιν, περὶ δαίτην ὀψίαν  
 ἀπεβαίνομεν· παρελθόντες δὲ εἰς τὴν πόλιν πολλοὺς  
 ὀνείρους καὶ ποικίλους ἑωρῶμεν.

Πρῶτον δὲ βούλομαι περὶ τῆς πόλεως εἰπεῖν, ἐπεὶ μηδὲ  
 ἄλλω τινὶ γέγραπται περὶ αὐτῆς, ὅς δὲ καὶ μόνος  
 ἐπεμνήσθη Ἡῶμος, οὐ πάνυ ἀκριβῶς συνέγραψεν.  
 κύκλω μὲν περὶ πᾶσαν αὐτὴν ὕλη ἀνέστηκεν, τὰ δένδρα  
 δὲ ἐστὶ μήκωνες ὑψηλαὶ καὶ μανδραγόραι καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῶν

τοῦπιόν τὰς ἐλπίδας· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐμαντῶ |a lie εἰπόντι

|be privy to . ταχέως δ' οὖν |act: overturn; mid: γῆν ναῦν  
|find oneself in

οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡδυνάμην φέρειν τὴν |sight - |greet, salute τὸν

Ναύπλιον |sail away

Καὶ μετ' ὀλίγον ἐφαίνετο πλησίον ἢ τῶν ὀνείρων νῆσος,

|obscure, καὶ |faint, ἰδεῖν· ἔπασχε δὲ καὶ αὐτὴ τι τοῖς  
|vague |obscure

ὀνείροις |similar to |recoil γὰρ προσιόντων ἡμῶν

καὶ |flee before καὶ |farther |stand/go . |seize, understand, catch,  
under; (pf) |overtake; (mp) happen  
δέ ποτε αὐτὴν καὶ |sail into |fall under the  
|head of εἰς τὸν ἤγπνον λιμένα

|address, call by name πλησίον τῶν πυλῶν τῶν |of ivory

ἦ τὸ τοῦ Ἀλεκτρυόνης ἱερόν ἐστιν, περὶ |after- |late, in evening  
|noon

ἀπεβαίνομεν· παρελθόντες δὲ εἰς τὴν πόλιν πολλοὺς

|dream καὶ |ornamented ὥρῳμεν.

Πρῶτον δὲ βούλομαι περὶ τῆς πόλεως εἰπεῖν, ἐπεὶ μηδὲ

ἄλλω τινὶ γέγραπται περὶ αὐτῆς, ὅς δὲ καὶ μόνος

|remember, ἦΘμηρος, οὐ πάνυ ἀκριβῶς |write down  
|speak about

|circle, μὲν περὶ πᾶσαν αὐτὴν ὕλην ἀνέστηκεν, τὰ |tree  
|wheel

δέ ἐστι |poppy ὑψηλαὶ καὶ |mandrake καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῶν

for I have never told a lie that I know of. Well, I turned back to the ship quickly, for I could not endure the sight, said good-bye to Nauplius, and sailed away.

After a short time the Isle of Dreams came in sight close by, faint and uncertain to the eye. It had itself some likeness to a dream, for as we approached it receded and retired and retreated to a greater distance. Overtaking it at length and sailing into the harbour called Sleep, we landed near the ivory gates, where the sanctuary of the Cock is, about dusk, and on entering the city, we saw many dreams of all sorts.

But first I desire to speak of the city itself, since no one else has written about it, and Homer, the only one to mention it at all, was not quite accurate in what he said. On all sides of it is a wood, in which the trees are tall poppies and mandragoras, and they have



αὐτῶν μέντοι τῶν ὀνείρων οὔτε φύσις οὔτε ἰδέα ἢ αὐτή (p. 280)

*vocabulary*

**ἀπηνής** harsh

**ἀποβλέπω** stare at, adore

**ἀποδημέω** be absent, abroad

**ἀριστερός** left-hand

**βασίλεια** noblewoman

**βασίλειος** kingly

**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion

**ἐλεφάντινος** of ivory

**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion

**ἴρις** -δος (f) rainbow

**καθάπερ** exactly as

**κέραμος** clay vessel ~ceramic

**κεράτινος** (ἄ) of horn

**λιμὴν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge ~limnic

**νήγρετος** deep (sleep)

**νυκτερίς** -δος (f) bat (animal)

~nocturnal

**νυκτιπóρος** night-prowling

**ὄρνεον** bird ~ornithology

**παννύχιος** all-night ~nocturnal

**παράρρῳ** flow past, slip by

**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape

**περίβολος** enclosing

**πηγή** headwaters, fountain

**πηγός** stout, mighty

**πλησίος** near, neighboring

**ποικίλος** ornamented; various

**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae

**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor

**σέβομαι** feel shame, awe

**σιδήρεος** of iron ~siderite

**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid

**ὑπαρχος** subordinate

**ὕψηλός** high

**φοβερός** frightful, afraid

**φονικός** murderous

**χρόα** skin, surface, complexion

πολύ τι πλήθος νυκτερίδων· τοῦτο γὰρ μόνον ἐν τῇ  
 νήσῳ γίνεται ὄρνεον. ποταμὸς δὲ παραρρέει πλησίον ὁ  
 ὑπ' αὐτῶν καλούμενος Νυκτιπόρος, καὶ πηγαὶ δύο παρὰ  
 τὰς πύλας· ὀνόματα καὶ ταύταις, τῇ μὲν Νήγρετος, τῇ  
 δὲ Παννυχία. ὁ περίβολος δὲ τῆς πόλεως ὑψηλός τε  
 καὶ ποικίλος, ἱριδι τὴν χροάν ὁμοιότατος· πύλαι μέντοι  
 ἔπεισιν οὐ δύο, καθάπερ ἢ Ὀμηρος εἴρηκεν, ἀλλὰ τέσσαρες,  
 δύο μὲν πρὸς τὸ τῆς Βλακείας πεδῖον ἀποβλέπουσαι, ἡ  
 μὲν σιδηρᾶ, ἡ δὲ κεράμου πεποιημένη, καθ' ἧς ἐλέγοντο  
 ἀποδημεῖν αὐτῶν οἳ τε φοβεροὶ καὶ φονικοὶ καὶ ἀπηνεῖς,  
 δύο δὲ πρὸς τὸν λιμένα καὶ τὴν θάλατταν, ἡ μὲν κερατίνη,  
 ἡ δὲ καθ' ἣν ἡμεῖς παρήλθομεν ἐλεφαντίνη. εἰσιόντι δὲ  
 εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐν δεξιᾷ μὲν ἐστὶ τὸ Νυκτῶον σέβουσι γὰρ  
 θεῶν ταύτην μάλιστα καὶ τὸν Ἀλεκτρυόνα· ἐκείνῳ δὲ  
 πλησίον τοῦ λιμένος τὸ ἱερὸν πεποιήται ἐν ἀριστερᾷ δὲ  
 τὰ τοῦ Ἡΰπνου βασιλεία. οὗτος γὰρ δὴ ἄρχει παρ' αὐτοῖς  
 σατράπας δύο καὶ ὑπάρχους πεποιημένους, Ταραξιώνά τε  
 τὸν Ματαιογένους καὶ Πλουτοκλέα τὸν Φαντασίωνος. ἐν



πολύ τι πλήθος |bat (animal) τοῦτο γὰρ μόνον ἐν τῇ  
νήσῳ γίνεται |bird . ποταμὸς δὲ |flow past, slip|near ὁ  
ὑπ' αὐτῶν καλούμενος |night-prowling καὶ πηγαὶ δύο παρὰ  
τὰς |gate ὀνόματα καὶ ταύταις, τῇ μὲν |deep (sleep) τῇ  
δὲ |all-night . ὁ |enclosing δὲ τῆς πόλεως |high τε  
καὶ |ornamented|rainbow, |skin, ὁμοιότατος\* |gate μέντοι  
|lie upon; ὁ ἄρ-|exactly as ἧς Ὀμηρος εἶρηκεν, ἀλλὰ τέσσαρες,  
|proach  
δύο μὲν πρὸς τὸ τῆς Βλακείας πεδῖον |stare at, adore , ἡ  
μὲν σιδηρᾶ, ἡ δὲ |clay vessel τεποιημένη, καθ' ἧς ἐλέγοντο  
|be absent, abroad ὅν οἱ τε |frightful, καὶ |murderous |harsh ,  
|afraid  
δύο δὲ πρὸς τὸν λιμένα καὶ τὴν θάλατταν, ἡ μὲν κερατίνη,  
ἡ δὲ καθ' ἣν ἡμεῖς |pass, escape |of ivory |go in δὲ  
εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐν δεξιᾷ μὲν ἐστὶ τὸ Νυκτῶον σέβουσι γὰρ  
θεῶν ταύτην μάλιστα καὶ τὸν Ἀλεκτρυόνα· ἐκείνῳ δὲ  
|near τοῦ λιμένος τὸ ἱερὸν πεποιήται ἐν |left-hand δὲ  
τὰ τοῦ Ἡπνίου βασιλεία. οὗτος γὰρ δὴ ἄρχει παρ' αὐτοῖς  
|satrap δύο καὶ |subordinate τεποιημένος, Ταραξίωνά τε  
τὸν Ματαιογένους καὶ Πλουτοκλέα τὸν Φαντασίωνος. ἐν

a great number of bats in them; for there is no other winged thing in the island. A river flows near which they call Sleepwalker, and there are two springs by the gates, named Soundly and Eight-hours. The wall of the city is high and parti-coloured, very like a rainbow in tint. The gates in it are not two, as Homer says, but four. Two face Slowcoach Plain, one of which is of iron and the other of earthenware; through these, it is said, the fearful, murderous, revolting dreams go out. The other two face the harbour and the sea, one of which is of horn and the other, through which we came in, of ivory. As one enters the city, on the right is the temple of Night, for the gods they worship most are Night and the Cock, whose sanctuary is built near the harbour. On the left is the palace of Sleep, who rules among them and has appointed two satraps or lieutenants, Nightmare, son of Causeless, and Rich, son of Fancy. In the centre of

*vocabulary*

ἄδυτον inner sanctum  
 ἄμορφος misshapen, shapeless  
 ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue  
 ἀπάτη trick, fraud, deceit  
 ~apatosaurus  
 ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute  
 γνωρίζω make known, discover  
 διασκευάζω get ready  
 ἔνιοι some  
 εὐειδής good-looking ~wit  
 εὐτελής of little worth  
 ἰδέα ἰδῆς semblance; kind, style  
 καθάπερ exactly as  
 κατακοιμίζω put to sleep  
 κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos  
 λαγχάνω be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
 forms) allot; receive  
 λαμπρός brilliant ~lamp  
 μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis  
 μεγαλοπρεπής befitting greatness  
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
 ξενίζω be host, treat as a guest  
 ~xenophobe  
 ὄνειρον dream  
 ὄνειρος dream

πάλαι long ago ~paleo  
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas  
 πάλω shake, brandish ~Pallas  
 παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake,  
 associate with  
 πηγὴ headwaters, fountain  
 πηγός stout, mighty  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 πομπή a sending, expedition ~pomp  
 προίστημι put forward; (+gen) be  
 head of, guard ~station  
 πρόσσειμι approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
 προφητεύω prophecy  
 πτερωτός winged  
 σατράπης -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
 governor  
 συνήθης habitual, intimate  
 ταπεινός low  
 τερατώδης portentous; mutant  
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
 ὑποδοχή reception, admission  
 ὑποκριτής -οῦ (m, 1) actor, orator  
 φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)  
 ~physics

μέση δὲ τῇ ἀγορᾷ πηγή τίς ἐστίν, ἣν καλοῦσι Καρεῶτιν·  
καὶ πλησίον ναοὶ δύο, Ἀπάτης καὶ Ἀληθείας· ἔνθα καὶ  
τὸ ἄδυτόν ἐστιν αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ μαντεῖον, οὗ προεστίκει  
προφητεύων Ἀντιφῶν ὁ τῶν ὀνείρων ὑποκριτής, ταύτης  
παρὰ τοῦ ἡΰπνου λαχὼν τῆς τιμῆς. αὐτῶν μέντοι τῶν  
ὀνείρων οὔτε φύσις οὔτε ἰδέα ἢ αὐτή, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν μακροὶ  
ἦσαν καὶ καλοὶ καὶ εὐειδεῖς, οἱ δὲ μικροὶ καὶ ἄμορφοι, καὶ  
οἱ μὲν χρύσειοι, ὥς ἐδόκουν, οἱ δὲ ταπεινοὶ τε καὶ εὐτελεῖς.  
ἦσαν δ' ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ πτερωτοὶ τινες καὶ τερατώδεις,  
καὶ ἄλλοι καθάπερ ἐς πομπὴν διεσκευασμένοι, οἱ μὲν  
ἐς βασιλέας, οἱ δὲ ἐς θεούς, οἱ δὲ εἰς ἄλλα τοιαῦτα  
κεκοσμημένοι. πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἐγνωρίσαμεν, πάλαι  
παρ' ἡμῖν ἐωρακότες, οἳ δὴ καὶ προσήεσαν καὶ ἡσπάζοντο  
ὥς ἂν καὶ συνήθεις ὑπάρχοντες, καὶ παραλαβόντες ἡμᾶς  
καὶ κατακοιμίσαντες πάνυ λαμπρῶς καὶ δεξιῶς ἐξένιζον,  
τὴν τε ἄλλην ὑποδοχὴν μεγαλοπρεπῇ παρασκευάσαντες  
καὶ ὑπισχνόμενοι βασιλέας τε ποιήσιν καὶ σατράπας.  
ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ ἀπήγον ἡμᾶς εἰς τὰς πατρίδας καὶ τοὺς

μέση δὲ τῇ ἀγορᾷ πηγὴ τίς ἐστιν, ἣν καλοῦσι Καρεῶτιν·  
καὶ πλησίον ναοὶ δύο, |trick, fraud καὶ Ἀληθείας· ἔνθα καὶ  
τὸ |inner sanctum ἐστιν αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ |prophetic warning, οὗ προεστίκει  
|prophecy Ἀντιφῶν ὁ τῶν ὀνειρώων |actor, orator ταύτης  
παρὰ τοῦ Ἡΰπνου |be allotted; (esp. - ἑλα- ὑτῶν μέντοι τῶν forms) allot; receive  
ὀνειρώων οὔτε |nature (of a|semblance; ἢ, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν μακροὶ thing) |kind, style  
ἦσαν καὶ καλοὶ καὶ |good-looking δὲ μικροὶ καὶ |misshapen, shapeless  
οἱ μὲν χρύσειοι, ὡς ἐδόκουν, οἱ δὲ |low τε καὶ |of little worth  
ἦσαν δ' ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ |winged τινες καὶ |portentious; mutant  
καὶ ἄλλοι |exactly as ἐς |a sending|get ready expedition, οἱ μὲν  
ἐς βασιλέας, οἱ δὲ ἐς θεούς, οἱ δὲ εἰς ἄλλα τοιαῦτα  
|marshal, array πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ |make known, discover  
παρ' ἡμῖν ἐωρακότες, οἱ δὲ καὶ |approach καὶ ἡσπάζοντο  
ὥς ἂν καὶ |habitual, intimate ὑπάρχοντες, καὶ παραλαβόντες ἡμᾶς  
καὶ |sleep; have sex πάνυ |brilliant καὶ δεξιῶς |be host  
τὴν τε ἄλλην |reception, admission |befitting greatness παρασκευάσαντες  
καὶ |promise, agree βασιλέας τε ποιήσιν καὶ |satrap  
|some δὲ καὶ |lead away, back ἰς τὰς πατρίδας καὶ τοὺς

the square is a spring which they call Drowsimere, and close to it are two temples, that of Falsehood and that of Truth. There too is their holy of holies and their oracle, which Antiphon, the interpreter of dreams, presided over as prophet, having had this office from Sleep. As to the dreams themselves, they differ from one another both in nature and in looks. Some were tall, handsome and well-proportioned, while others were small and ugly; and some were rich, I thought, while others were humble and beggarly. There were winged and portentous dreams among them, and there were others dressed up as if for a carnival, being clothed to represent kings and gods and different characters of the sort. We actually recognised many of them, whom we had seen long ago at home. These came up to us and greeted us like old acquaintances, took us with them, put us to sleep and entertained us very splendidly and hospitably. They treated us like lords in every way, and even promised to make us kings and nabobs. A few of them actually took us off home, gave us a sight of

*vocabulary*

**αἶσσω** dart, glance  
**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read, understand, persuade  
**ἀναθρόσκω** leap up  
**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀνεγείρω** awaken  
**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off; turn out ~basis  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**αὐθήμερος** on the same day  
**ἄφνω** suddenly, surprisingly  
**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus  
**διασώζω** preserve through  
**ἐκπλέω** sail away ~float  
**ἐπισιτίζομαι** (ἴλ.) take supplies  
**ἐπιστολή** message, letter

**εὖωχέω** fete, feed well  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**καταρρήγνυμι** (ῥ) break down  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**μετανοέω** repent  
**μόλις** with difficulty, barely  
**ναυαγία** (ἄα) shipwreck  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**οἰκειόω** adopt, adapt  
**προσέχω** direct to; think about  
**σχεδία** raft  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**τριταῖος** on the third day  
**τρυφάω** luxuriate, revel ~drop

οἰκείους ἐπεδείκνουν καὶ αὐθημερὸν ἐπανῆγον. ἡμέρας μὲν οὖν τριάκοντα καὶ ἴσας νύκτας παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐμείναμεν καθεύδοντες εὐωχούμενοι. ἔπειτα δὲ ἄφνω βροντῆς μεγάλης καταρραγείσης ἀνεγρόμενοι καὶ ἀναθορόντες ἀνήχθημεν ἐπισιτισάμενοι.

Τριταῖοι δ' ἐκείθεν τῇ Ὠγυγία νήσῳ προσσχόντες ἀπεβαίνομεν. πρότερον δ' ἐγὼ λύσας τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνεγίνωσκον τὰ γεγραμμένα. ἦν δὲ τοιάδε·

«Ὀδυσσεὺς Καλυψοῖ χαίρειν.

«Ἄισθι με, ὥς τὰ πρῶτα ἐξέπλευσα παρὰ σοῦ τὴν σχεδίαν κατασκευασάμενος, ναυαγία χρησάμενον μόλις ὑπὸ Λευκοθέας διασωθῆναι εἰς τὴν τῶν Φαιάκων χώραν, ὑφ' ᾧν ἐς τὴν οἰκείαν ἀποπεμφθεὶς κατέλαβον πολλοὺς τῆς γυναικὸς μνηστῆρας ἐν τοῖς ἡμετέροις τρυφῶντας· ἀποκτείνας δὲ ἅπαντας ὑπὸ Τηλεγόνου ὕστερον τοῦ ἐκ Κίρκης μοι γενομένου ἀνηρέθην, καὶ νῦν εἰμι ἐν τῇ Μακάρων νήσῳ πάνυ μετανοῶν ἐπὶ τῷ καταλιπεῖν



οἰκείους ἐπεδείκνυν καὶ αὐθημερὸν ἐπανήγον. ἡμέρας  
μὲν οὖν τριάκοντα καὶ ἴσας νύκτας παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐμείναμεν

|lie down |fete, feed well . ἔπειτα δὲ |sud- |thunder  
|denly,  
μεγάλης |break down |awaken καὶ |surpris-  
|ingly leap up

ἀνήχθημεν |take supplies

|on the third day ' εἶθεν τῇ Ὠγυγία νήσω |direct to; think  
|about

|leave, get off; . πρότερον δ' ἐγὼ λύσας τὴν |message,  
|turn out |letter

ἀνεγίνωσκον τὰ γεγραμμένα. ἦν δὲ |such

«Ὀδυσσεὺς Καλυψοῖ χαίρειν.

«|dart, με, ὥς τὰ πρῶτα |sail away παρὰ σοῦ τὴν  
|glance

|raft |equip, build , |shipwreck ,ρησάμενον |with difficulty,  
|barely

ὑπὸ Λευκοθέας |preserve εἰς τὴν τῶν Φαιάκων χώραν,  
|through

ὑφ' ὧν ἐς τὴν |house- |send away |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
|hold, (mp) happen

τῆς γυναικὸς μνηστήρας ἐν τοῖς ἡμετέροις |luxuriate,  
|proper revel

ἀποκτείνας δὲ ἅπαντας ὑπὸ Τηλεγόνου ὕστερον τοῦ ἐκ

Κίρκης μοι γενομένου |take up , καὶ νῦν εἰμι ἐν τῇ

Μακάρων νήσω πάνυ |repent ἐπὶ τῷ |leave behind,  
|abandon

our friends and families and brought us back the same day. For thirty days and thirty nights we stopped with them and had a fine time—sleeping! Then of a sudden a great thunder-clap came; we woke up, sprang out of bed and put to sea as soon as we had laid in supplies.

On the third day out from there we touched at the island of Ogygia and landed. But first I opened the letter and read what was in it. It was:

“Odysseus to Calypso, greeting.

“Soon after I built the raft and sailed away from you I was shipwrecked, and with the help of Leucothea managed to reach the land of the Phaeacians in safety. They sent me home, and there I found that my wife had a number of suitors who were living on the fat of the land at our house. I killed them all, and was afterwards slain by Telegonus, my son by Circe. Now I am on the Isle of the Blest, thoroughly sorry to have given up

*vocabulary*

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture  
 ἀθανασία immortality  
 ἀποδιδράσκω escape  
 δακρύω weep  
 δηλώω show, disclose  
 δίαιτα way of life; home; arbitration  
 εἰκάζω liken; conjecture  
 ἐπιλέγω say re, say also; choose; (mid)  
 think over  
 ἐπιστολή message, letter  
 ἐστιάω give a feast  
 ἔωθεν at first light  
 ἡλών beach  
 καθάπερ exactly as  
 κάτειμι go down, disembark ~ion  
 κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
 have sex  
 κομπάζω boast

λαμπρός brilliant ~lamp  
 ξενίζω be host, treat as a guest  
 ~xenophobe  
 ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe  
 ὅποῖος whatever kind  
 ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view  
 ~thanatopsis  
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo  
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas  
 πάλω shake, brandish ~Pallas  
 περιπίπτω embrace; fall in with  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 προέρχομαι proceed, come out  
 προτείνω hold out, offer  
 σπήλαιον grotto, cavern  
 σφοδρός vehement  
 σωφρονέω be sane, moderate  
 ταλασιουργέω spin wool  
 χειμάζω overwinter

τὴν παρὰ σοὶ δίαιταν καὶ τὴν ὑπὸ σοῦ προτεινομένην ἀθανασίαν. ἦν οὖν καιροῦ λάβωμαι, ἀποδρὰς ἀφίξομαι πρὸς σέ.» ταῦτα μὲν ἐδήλου ἡ ἐπιστολή, καὶ περὶ ἡμῶν, ὅπως ξενισθῶμεν. ἐγὼ δὲ προελθὼν ὀλίγον ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης εὗρον τὸ σπήλαιον τοιοῦτον οἷον Ἥομηρος εἶπεν, καὶ αὐτὴν ταλασιουργοῦσαν.

Ὡς δὲ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔλαβεν καὶ ἐπελέξατο, πρῶτα μὲν ἐπὶ πολὺ ἐδάκρυνεν, ἔπειτα δὲ παρεκάλει ἡμᾶς ἐπὶ ξένια καὶ εἰστία λαμπρῶς καὶ περὶ τοῦ Ὀδυσσέως ἐπυνθάνετο καὶ περὶ τῆς Πηνελόπης, ὅποια τε εἴη τὴν ὄψιν καὶ εἰ σωφρονοίη, καθάπερ Ὀδυσσεὺς πάλαι περὶ αὐτῆς ἐκόμπαζεν· καὶ ἡμεῖς τοιαῦτα ἀπεκρινάμεθα, ἐξ ὧν εἰκάζομεν εὐφρανεῖσθαι αὐτήν.

Τότε μὲν οὖν ἀπελθόντες ἐπὶ ναῦν πλησίον ἐπὶ τῆς ἡόνος ἐκοιμήθημεν. ἔωθεν δὲ ἀνηγόμεθα σφοδρότερον κατιόντος τοῦ πνεύματος· καὶ δὴ χειμασθέντες ἡμέρας δύο τῇ τρίτῃ περιπίπτομεν τοῖς Κολοκυνθοπειραταῖς. ἄνθρωποι δὲ εἰσιν οὗτοι ἄγριοι ἐκ τῶν πλησίον νήσων

τὴν παρὰ σοὶ |way of life; home; arbitration ὑπὸ σοῦ |hold out, offer  
 |immortality ἦν οὖν καιροῦ λάβωμαι, |escape ἀφίξομαι  
 πρὸς σέ.» ταῦτα μὲν ἐδήλου ἡ ἐπιστολή, καὶ περὶ ἡμῶν,  
 ὅπως |be host ἐγὼ δὲ |proceed, come οὐτὶ ἀπὸ τῆς  
 θαλάττης εὗρον τὸ |grotto, τοιοῦτον οἶον ἢ Ὅμηρος εἶπεν,  
 |cavern  
 καὶ αὐτὴν |spin wool

Ὡς δὲ τὴν |message, ἔλαβεν καὶ |say, choose, πρῶτα μὲν  
 |letter |think over  
 ἐπὶ πολὺν |weep , ἔπειτα δὲ παρεκάλει ἡμᾶς ἐπὶ |of hospitality  
 καὶ |give a|brilliant καὶ περὶ τοῦ Ὀδυσσέως ἐπυνθάνετο  
 |feast  
 καὶ περὶ τῆς Πηνελόπης, |whatever kind, τὴν |sight καὶ  
 εἰ |be sane, moder-|exactly as Ὀδυσσεὺς πάλαι περὶ αὐτῆς  
 |ate  
 |boast καὶ ἡμεῖς τοιαῦτα ἀπεκρινάμεθα, ἐξ ὧν  
 |liken; εὐφρανείσθαι αὐτήν.  
 |conjecture

Τότε μὲν οὖν ἀπελθόντες ἐπὶ ναῦν |near ἐπὶ τῆς |beach  
 ἐκοιμήθημεν. |at first light ηγόμεθα |vehement |go down, disembark  
 τοῦ πνεύματος· καὶ δὴ |overwinter ἡμέρας δύο τῇ τρίτῃ  
 |embrace; fall in τοῖς Κολοκυνθοπειραταῖς. ἄνθρωποι δέ  
 |with  
 εἰσιν οὗτοι |wild, ἐκ τῶν |near νήσων  
 |savage

my life with you and the immortality which you offered me. Therefore, if I get a chance, I shall run away and come to you.” In addition to this, the letter said that she was to entertain us. On going a short way from the sea I found the cave, which was as Homer described it, and found Calypso herself working wool. When she had taken the letter and read it, she wept a long time at first, and then she asked us in to enjoy her hospitality, gave us a splendid feast and enquired about Odysseus and Penelope—how she looked and whether she was prudent, as Odysseus used to boast in old times. We made her such answers as we thought would please her.

After that, we went back to the ship and slept beside it on the shore, and early in the morning we put to sea in a rising wind. We were storm-tossed for two days, and on the third we fell in with the Pumpkin-pirates. They are savages from the

*vocabulary*

ἀγγώμαλος nearly equal  
 ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
 ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail  
 ἄτε as if; since  
 ἄω aor: to sate ~sate  
 δείκνυμι (ὄ) show, point out  
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous  
 ἐμπλέω sail in  
 ἐντεριώνη pith, heart-wood  
 ἐξαιρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
 ἐξήκοντα sixty  
 ἐπαίρω lift, raise ~heresy  
 ἐπειδάν when, after  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἱστός mast, loom ~stand  
 ἰσχυρός (ὄ) strong, forceful, violent  
 καλάμινος of reed  
 κάρυον nut, kernel  
 καρυοναύτης -ου (m, 1) sailor in a nut

κατατραυματίζω wound, cripple  
 κατόπιν behind, hereafter  
 κελύφανον (ὄ) sheath, shell  
 κοιλαίνω hollow out  
 κολοκύνθινος made from gourds  
 κολοκυνθών gourd patch  
 ληστεύω rob, plunder  
 μεσημβρία midday; the south  
 μῆκος -ους (n, 3) length, stature  
 ναυμαχέω fight at sea  
 ξηραίνω dry up ~xeriscape  
 ὀθόνη linen  
 ὀλιγωρέω consider unimportant  
 παραπλέω sail past ~float  
 πῆχυς forearm, cubit  
 πλήρωμα -τος (n, 3) fullness  
 προσβάλλω hit, attack, approach;  
 attach, offer ~ballistic  
 προσπλέω sail toward, against  
 φύλλον leaf

ληστεύοντες τοὺς παραπλέοντας. τὰ πλοῖα δὲ ἔχουσι  
 μεγάλα κολοκύνθινα τὸ μῆκος πήχεων ἑξήκοντα· ἐπειδὴν  
 γὰρ ξηράνωσι τὴν κολόκυνθαν, κοιλάναντες αὐτὴν  
 καὶ ἐξελόντες τὴν ἐντεριώνην ἐμπλέουσιν, ἱστοῖς μὲν  
 χρώμενοι καλαμίνοις, ἀντὶ δὲ τῆς ὀθόνης τῷ φύλλῳ  
 τῆς κολοκύνθης. προσβαλόντες οὖν ἡμῖν ἀπὸ δύο  
 πληρωμάτων ἐμάχοντο καὶ πολλοὺς κατετραυματίζον  
 βάλλοντες τῷ σπέρματι τῶν κολοκυνθῶν. ἀγχωμάλως  
 δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ ναυμαχοῦντες περὶ μεσημβρίαν εἶδομεν  
 κατόπιν τῶν Κολοκυνθοπειρατῶν προσπλέοντας τοὺς  
 Καρυοναῦτας. πολέμοι δὲ ἦσαν ἀλλήλοις, ὥς  
 ἔδειξαν· ἐπεὶ γὰρ κάκεινοι ἥσθοντο αὐτοὺς ἐπιόντας,  
 ἡμῶν μὲν ὀλιγώρησαν, τραπόμενοι δὲ ἐπ' ἐκείνους  
 ἐναυμάχουν. ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐν τοσούτῳ ἐπάραντες τὴν ὀθόνην  
 ἐφεύγομεν ἀπολιπόντες αὐτοὺς μαχομένους, καὶ δῆλοι  
 ἦσαν κρατήσοντες οἱ Καρυοναῦται ἅτε καὶ πλείους  
 πέντε γὰρ εἶχον πληρώματα καὶ ἀπὸ ἰσχυροτέρων νεῶν  
 μαχόμενοι· τὰ γὰρ πλοῖα ἦν αὐτοῖς κελύφανα καρύων



|rob, plunder τούς |sail past τὰ πλοῖα δὲ ἔχουσι  
 μεγάλα |made from gourds |length, |forearm, |sixty ἔπειδ' ἂν  
 |stature |cubit  
 γὰρ |dry up τὴν κολόκυνθαν, |hollow out αὐτὴν  
 καὶ |pick, steal; |dēdi-|pith, |sail in , |loom μὲν  
 |cate; destroy |heart-wood  
 χρώμενοι |of reed , ἀντὶ δὲ τῆς |linen τῷ |leaf  
 τῆς κολοκύνθης. |hit, attack, approach; ἡμῖν ἀπὸ δύο  
 |attach, offer  
 |fullness ἐμάχοντο καὶ πολλοὺς |wound, cripple  
 βάλλοντες τῷ σπέρματι τῶν |gourd patch |nearly equal  
 δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ ναυμαχοῦντες περὶ |midday; the south<sup>ν</sup> -μεν  
 κατόπιν τῶν Κολοκυνθοπειρατῶν |sail toward, against. οὗς  
 |sailor in a nut . πολέμοι δὲ ἦσαν ἀλλήλοισι, ὥς  
 ἔδειξαν· ἐπεὶ γὰρ κακέينوι ἦσθοντο αὐτοὺς ἐπιόντας,  
 ἡμῶν μὲν |consider , τραπόμενοι δὲ ἐπ' ἐκείνους  
 |unimportant  
 ἐναυμάχουν. ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐν τοσοῦτῳ |lift, raise τὴν |linen  
 ἐφεύγομεν ἀπολιπόντες αὐτοὺς μαχομένους, καὶ δῆλοι  
 ἦσαν κρατήσοντες οἱ |sailor in a nut ἅτε καὶ πλείους  
 πέντε γὰρ εἶχον |fullness καὶ ἀπὸ ἰσχυροτέρων νεῶν  
 μαχόμενοι· τὰ γὰρ πλοῖα ἦν αὐτοῖς |sheath, |nut, kernel  
 |shell

neighbouring islands who prey on passing sailors. They have large boats of pumpkin, sixty cubits long; for after drying a pumpkin they hollow it out, take out the insides and go sailing in it, using reeds for masts and a pumpkin-leaf for a sail. They attacked us with two crews and gave us battle, wounding many of us by hitting us with pumpkin-seeds instead of stones. After fighting for a long time on even terms, about noon we saw the Nut-sailors coming up astern of the Pumpkin-pirates. They were enemies to one another, as they showed by their actions; for when the Pumpkin-pirates noticed them coming up, they neglected us and faced about and fought with them. But in the meantime we hoisted our canvas and fled, leaving them fighting. It was evident that the Nut-sailors would win, as they were in greater numbers—they had five crews—and fought from stouter ships. Their boats were the halves of empty nutshells, each

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἀλκυών** -όνος (f, 3) kingfisher  
 ~halcyon  
**ἀναπηδάω** leap up, start up  
**ἀποκρύπτω** hide away ~cryptic  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**γαλήνη** stillness of wind or sea  
**γοῦν** at least then  
**δελφίς** -νος (m) dolphin  
**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθηναι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer  
**ἐπίπαν** =ἐπί  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἐρημόω** raze, bereave; desert, isolate  
**ἡμιτομίας** -ου (m, 1) half a eunuch  
**ἡμίτομος** cut in two  
**ἰάομαι** (i) cure ~pediatrician  
**καλιά** barn, nest, niche  
**καρκίνος** crab; cancer  
**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
 ~fugitive  
**κενόω** make empty  
**ληιστής** -οῦς (m, 3) bandit  
**ληιστός** lootable ~lucre  
**ληστής** -οῦ (m, 1) bandit  
**μάτην** in vain, randomly

**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**μεσονύκτιος** of/at midnight  
**μήκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature  
**ξηρός** dry, the land ~xeriscape  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὀργυιά** fathom, arm's length  
**οὐπω** no longer  
**ὀχέω** carry; be afflicted with ~wagon  
**παμμεγέθης** very great, immense  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**προσδέχομαι** await  
**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic  
**προσοκέλλω** run aground  
**σηπία** cuttle-fish  
**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**τραυματίας** casualty  
**ὑπείμι** be under  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain  
**χρεμετίζω** neigh

ἡμίτομα, κεκενωμένα, μέγεθος δὲ ἐκάστου ἡμιτομίου εἰς  
μῆκος ὀργυιαί πεντεκαῖδεκα.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπεκρύψαμεν αὐτούς, ἰώμεθα τοὺς τραυματίας,  
καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὡς ἐπίπαν ἦμεν, αἰεί τινας  
ἐπιβουλὰς προσδεχόμενοι· οὐ μάτην. οὐπω γοῦν ἐδεδύκει  
ὁ ἥλιος, καὶ ἀπὸ τινος ἐρήμου νήσου προσήλαυνον ἡμῖν  
ὅσον εἴκοσι ἄνδρες ἐπὶ δελφίνων μεγάλων ὀχούμενοι,  
λησταὶ καὶ οὗτοι· καὶ οἱ δελφῖνες αὐτοὺς ἔφερον ἀσφαλῶς,  
καὶ ἀναπηδῶντες ἐχρεμέτιζον ὥσπερ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
πλησίον ἦσαν, διαστάντες οἱ μὲν ἔνθεν, οἱ δὲ ἔνθεν  
ἔβαλλον ἡμᾶς σηπίαῖς ξηραῖς καὶ ὀφθαλμοῖς καρκίνων.  
τοξευόντων δὲ ἡμῶν καὶ ἀκοντιζόντων οὐκέτι ὑπέμενον,  
ἀλλὰ τρωθέντες οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν πρὸς τὴν νῆσον  
κατέφυγον.

## 2.40

Περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον γαλήνης οὔσης ἐλάθομεν  
προσοκείμενοι ἀλκυνόνοσ καλιᾷ παμμεγέθει· σταδίῳ

|cut in two, |make empty , μέγεθος δὲ ἐκάστου |half a eunuch

|length, |fathom, |15  
|stature |arm's  
|length

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |hide away αὐτούς, |cure τοὺς |casualty ,

καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὡς |ἐπὶ ἡμεν, αἰεί τινας

|a plot, scheme , οὐδ' ἐχόμενοι· οὐ μάτην. οὐπω |at least then' εἰ

ὁ ἥλιος, καὶ ἀπὸ τινος ἐρήμου νήσου |go to, approach ἡμῖν

ὅσον εἴκοσι ἄνδρες ἐπὶ |dolphin μεγάλων |carry; be af-  
|flicted with

λησταὶ καὶ οὗτοι· καὶ οἱ |dolphin αὐτοὺς ἔφερον ἀσφαλῶς,

καὶ |leap up, start up |neigh ὥσπερ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ

πλησίον ἦσαν, |stand apart οἱ μὲν ἔνθεν, οἱ δὲ ἔνθεν

ἔβαλλον ἡμᾶς |cuttle-fish |dry, the land ὀφθαλμοῖς |crab;  
|cancer

|shoot an arrow at ἡμῶν καὶ ἀκοντιζόντων οὐκέτι ὑπέμενον,

ἀλλὰ |wound, bring οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν πρὸς τὴν νήσον  
|to grief

|resort to, flee  
|to, appeal to

2.40

Περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον |stillness of οὐσῆς ἐλάθομεν  
|wind or sea

|run aground |kingfisher |barn, |very great, immense  
|nest,  
|niche

of which measured fifteen fathoms in length.

When we had lost them from sight, we attended to the wounded, and thereafter we kept under arms most of the time, always looking for attacks. And we did not look in vain. In fact, the sun had not yet gone down when from a desert island there came out against us about twenty men riding on huge dolphins, who were pirates like the others. The dolphins carried them securely and plunged and neighed like horses. When they were close by, they separated and threw at us from both sides with dry cuttle-fish and crabs' eyes. But when we let fly at them with spears and arrows, they could not hold their ground, but fled to the island, most of them wounded.

#### 2.40

About midnight, while it was calm, we unexpectedly ran aground on an enormous kingfisher's nest;



πελέκεσιν γοῦν διακόψαντες ἐν τῶν ὧν νεοττὸν ἄπτερον ἐξεκολάψαμεν εἴκοσι  
γυπῶν ἀδρότερον. (p. 304)

*vocabulary*

ἄδρός full-grown, fat  
 ἄλκυών -όνος (f, 3) kingfisher  
 ~halcyon  
 ἀναβοάω shout out  
 ἀνακομάω regain hair  
 ἀναπέτομαι fly away  
 ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
 ἄπτερος wingless; winged  
 ~archeopteryx  
 ἄφνω suddenly, surprisingly  
 γοερός distressing; lamenting  
 γοῦν at least then  
 γύψ γυπός (m) vulture  
 δένδρον tree  
 διακόπτω cut through, interrupt  
 διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred  
 ἐκβλαστάνω sprout  
 ἐκβλαστέω sprout  
 ἐκκολάπτω erase; hatch  
 ἐνδίδωμι hand over, lend, show, allow  
 ἐνδοθεν from within  
 ἐξήκοντα sixty  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπιβαίνω (+gen) set foot on, board, climb ~basis  
 ἐπιπλέω sail on, over ~float  
 ἐπισημαίνω be a sign or symptom  
 θάλλω to warm  
 θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable

ἱστός mast, loom ~stand  
 καλιά barn, nest, niche  
 καταδύω enter, sink  
 κρώζω croak  
 κυβερνήτης -ου (m, 1) steersman, governor ~govern  
 μείων less, smaller  
 νεοσσός nestling  
 οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone  
 παράδοξος incredible  
 πέλεκυς ax (for war or woodcutting)  
 πεντακόσιοι 500  
 περίμετρος very long ~metric  
 περιπληθής populous; large ~plethora  
 πίθος barrel, big jar  
 προῖμι send forth, abandon  
 προσείκα resemble  
 πρύμνα stern  
 πτερόν feather, wing ~pterodactyl  
 πτερώ give wings  
 πτερύσσομαι flutter, flap  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 συμφορέω collect  
 σχεδία raft  
 τέρας -ως (n, 3) omen, fetish  
 ὑποφαίνω show a little ~photon  
 φαλακρός bald  
 χηνίσκος goose-head stern ornament  
 ὠόν egg

γοῦν ἦν αὕτη ἐξήκοντα τὸ περίμετρον. ἐπέπλεεν δὲ ἡ  
 ἄλκυων τὰ ὥα θάλπουσα οὐ πολὺ μείων τῆς καλιᾶς. καὶ  
 δὴ ἀναπταμένη μικροῦ μὲν κατέδυσσε τὴν ναῦν τῷ ἀνέμῳ  
 τῶν πτερῶν. ὥχετο δ' οὖν φεύγουσα γοερὰν τινα φωνὴν  
 προῖεμένη. ἐπιβάντες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἡμέρας ἤδη ὑποφαινούσης  
 ἐθεώμεθα τὴν καλιὰν σχεδία μεγάλη προσεοικυῖαν ἐκ  
 δένδρων μεγάλων συμπεφορημένην· ἐπὶν δὲ καὶ ὥα  
 πεντακόσια, ἕκαστον αὐτῶν Χίου πίθου περιπληθέστερον.  
 ἤδη μέντοι καὶ οἱ νεοττοὶ ἔνδοθεν ἐφαίνοντο καὶ ἔκρωζον.  
 πελέκεσιν γοῦν διακόψαντες ἐν τῶν ὥων νεοττὸν ἄπτερον  
 ἐξεκολάψαμεν εἴκοσι γυπῶν ἀδρότερον.

#### 2.41-42

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πλείοντες ἀπείχομεν τῆς καλιᾶς ὅσον σταδίου  
 διακοσίους, τέρατα ἡμῖν μεγάλα καὶ θαυμαστὰ  
 ἐπεσήμανεν· ὃ τε γὰρ ἐν τῇ πρύμνῃ χηνίσκος ἄφνω  
 ἐπτερύξατο καὶ ἀνεβόησεν, καὶ ὁ κυβερνήτης ὁ Σκίνθαρος  
 φαλακρὸς ἤδη ὢν ἀνεκόμησεν, καὶ τὸ πάντων δὴ  
 παραδοξότατον, ὁ γὰρ ἰστὸς τῆς νεὼς ἐξεβλάστησεν καὶ



γοῦν ἦν αὕτη ἐξήκοντα τὸ περίμετρον. ἐπέπλεεν δὲ ἡ  
 |kingfisher . ἃ ὥα |to warm οὐ πολὺ |less, . ἥς |barn, nest, niche  
 |smaller  
 δὴ |fly away μικροῦ μὲν κατέδυσε τὴν ναῦν τῷ ἀνέμῳ  
 τῶν πτερῶν. ὥχετο δ' οὖν φεύγουσα |distressing; α φωνὴν  
 |lamenting  
 προϊέμενη. ἐπιβάντες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἡμέρας ἥδη |show a little  
 ἐθεώμεθα τὴν |barn, |raft μεγάλη |resemble ἐκ  
 |nest, |niche  
 δένδρων μεγάλων συμπεφορημένην· ἐπὶν δὲ καὶ ὥα  
 πεντακόσια, ἕκαστον αὐτῶν Χίου |barrel, |populous; large  
 |big jar  
 ἥδη μέντοι καὶ οἱ |nestling ἔνδοθεν ἐφαίνοντο καὶ |croak  
 |ax γοῦν |cut through, ἐν τῶν |egg |nestling |wingless;  
 |interrupt |winged  
 |erase; hatch εἴκοσι |vulture |fat

## 2.41-42

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πλείοντες ἀπείχομεν τῆς |barn, nest, niche γαδίου  
 διακοσίους, τέρατα ἡμῖν μεγάλα καὶ θαυμαστά  
 |be a sign or symptom γὰρ ἐν τῇ πρύμνῃ |goose-head ὡ  
 |stern ornament  
 |flutter, flap καὶ |shout out , καὶ ὁ κυβερνήτης ὁ Σκίνθαρος  
 |bald ἥδη ὦν ἀνεκόμηνεν, καὶ τὸ πάντων δὴ  
 παραδοξότατον, ὁ γὰρ ἰστός τῆς νεὼς ἐξεβλάστησεν καὶ

really, it was sixty furlongs in circumference. The female was sailing on it, keeping her eggs warm, and she was not much smaller than the nest—in fact, as she started up she almost sunk the ship with the wind of her wings. She flew off, however, uttering a plaintive cry. We landed when day began to break, and observed that the nest was like a great raft, built of huge trees. There were five hundred eggs in it, every one of them bigger than a Chian wine-jar, and the chicks were already visible inside them and were chirping. We cut open one of the eggs with axes and took from the shell a featherless chick fatter than twenty vultures.

#### 2.41-42

When we had sailed a distance of two hundred furlongs from the nest, great and wonderful signs manifested themselves to us. The gooseneck suddenly grew feathers and started cackling, the sailing-master, Scintharus, who was already bald, became the owner of long hair, and what was strangest of all, the



ἐγὼ δὲ ἀνελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ μέγιστον δένδρον ἐπεσκόπουν τὰ ἐπέκεινα ὅπως ἔχοι, καὶ ἐώρων ἐπὶ σταδίους μὲν πεντήκοντα ἢ ὀλίγω πλείους τὴν ὕλην οὖσαν, ἔπειτα δὲ αὖθις ἕτερον ὠκεανὸν ἐκδεχόμενον. (p. 308)

*vocabulary*

ἄβυσσος bottomless  
 ἀκίνητος motionless, immovable  
 ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀλλόκοτος weird  
 ἀναστρέφω act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy  
 ἀνατίθηναι consecrate, lay on, impute; (mp) reproach  
 ἀναφύω grow back  
 ἀνέρχομαι go up; return  
 ἄπορος impassable, difficult  
 ἄρριζος (ῑ) rootless  
 ἄρριζω snarl  
 δένδρον tree  
 διέρχομαι pierce, traverse  
 δράω do, accomplish  
 εἰκάζω liken; conjecture  
 εἰκός likely  
 ἐκδέχομαι receive; succeed to a position  
 ἐπέκεινα beyond, the far side  
 ἐπιπλέω sail on, over ~float  
 ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect  
 ἡπειρος (f) mainland, continent  
 καθάπερ exactly as  
 καρποφορέω bear fruit

κατανοέω notice, realize, learn  
 καταφυτεύω plant, transplant  
 κλάδος branch, shoot  
 κυπάρισσος (f) cypress  
 λάσιος shaggy, overgrown ~lanolin  
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless  
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal  
 οὐπω no longer  
 πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea ~pelagic  
 πεντακόσιοι 500  
 πέπειρος ripe  
 πίτυς pine  
 πλησιάζω bring/be near; have sex  
 προσεχής close  
 πυκνός dense, frequent; shrewd  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 σταφυλή cluster of grapes ~staphylococcus  
 σῦκον fig  
 ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea  
 ὕλη (ῑ) forest, firewood  
 ὕληεις (ῑ) wooded  
 φάντασμα -τος (n, 3) ghost, apparition  
 ὠκεανός ocean

κλάδους ἀνέφυσεν καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ ἐκαρποφόρησεν, ὁ δὲ καρπὸς ἦν σῦκα καὶ σταφυλὴ μέλαινα, οὕτω πέπειρος. ταῦτα ἰδόντες ὥς εἰκὸς ἐταράχθημεν καὶ ἠυχόμεθα τοῖς θεοῖς διὰ τὸ ἀλλόκοτον τοῦ φαντάσματος.

Οὕτω δὲ πεντακοσίους σταδίους διελθόντες εἶδομεν ὕλην μεγίστην καὶ λάσιον πιτύων καὶ κυπαρίττων. καὶ ἡμεῖς μὲν εἰκάσαμεν ἥπειρον εἶναι· τὸ δ' ἦν πέλαγος ἄβυσσον ἀρρίζοις δένδροις καταπεφυτευμένον· εἰστήκει δὲ τὰ δένδρα ὅμως ἀκίνητα, ὀρθὰ καθάπερ ἐπιπλέοντα. πλησιάσαντες δ' οὖν καὶ τὸ πᾶν κατανοήσαντες ἐν ἀπόρῳ εἰχόμεθα τί χρὴ δρᾶν· οὔτε γὰρ διὰ τῶν δένδρων πλεῖν δυνατὸν ἦν— πυκνὰ γὰρ καὶ προσεχῇ ὑπῆρχεν— οὔτε ἀναστρέφειν ἐδόκει ράδιον.

Ἐγὼ δὲ ἀνελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ μέγιστον δένδρον ἐπεσκόπουν τὰ ἐπέκεινα ὅπως ἔχοι, καὶ εἰς τὸ σταδίον μὲν πεντήκοντα ἢ ὀλίγω πλείους τὴν ὕλην οὖσαν, ἔπειτα δὲ αὖθις ἕτερον ὠκεανὸν ἐκδεχόμενον. καὶ δὴ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν ἀναθεμένους τὴν ὕλην οὖσαν, ἔπειτα δὲ αὖθις ἕτερον

|branch, |grow back καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ |bear fruit , ὁ δὲ  
|shoot

καρπὸς ἦν |fig καὶ |cluster of grapes...να, οὕτω |ripe

ταῦτα ἰδόντες ὥς |likely |mess things up καὶ ἠνυχόμεθα τοῖς

θεοῖς διὰ τὸ |weird τοῦ |ghost,  
|apparition

Οὕτω δὲ |500 σταδίους διελθόντες εἶδομεν ὕλην

μεγίστην καὶ λάσιον |pine καὶ |cypress καὶ

ἡμεῖς μὲν |liken; ἥπειρον εἶναι· τὸ δ' ἦν |the open sea  
|conjecture

|bottomless ἱρρίζοις δένδροις |plant, transplant εἰστήκει

δὲ τὰ δένδρα ὅμως |motionless, ἴρθὰ |exactly as ἐπιπλέοντα.  
|immovable

|bring/be near; δ' οὖν καὶ τὸ πᾶν |notice, realize, ἐν |impassable,  
|have sex |learn |difficult

εἰχόμεθα τί χρὴ δρᾶν· οὔτε γὰρ διὰ τῶν δένδρων πλεῖν

δυνατὸν ἦν— πυκνὰ γὰρ καὶ |close ὑπῆρχεν— οὔτε

|act: overturn; mid: εἰ ῥάδιον.  
|find oneself in

Ἐγὼ δὲ |go up; return· τὸ μέγιστον δένδρον |look upon, inspect

τὰ |beyond, the far side ἄλχοι, καὶ ἐώρων ἐπὶ σταδίους μὲν

πεντήκοντα ἢ ὀλίγω πλείους τὴν ὕλην οὔσαν, ἔπειτα δὲ

αὐθις ἕτερον |ocean |receive; succeed καὶ δὴ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν  
|to a position

|consecrate, lay on, im- γιν οὔσαν, ἔπειτα δὲ αὐθις ἕτερον  
|pute; (mp) reproach

ship's mast budded, branched, and bore fruit at the summit! The fruit consisted of figs and black raisin-grapes, which were not yet ripe. On seeing this, we were disturbed, as well we might be, and offered a prayer to the gods on account of the strangeness of the manifestation.

We had not yet gone five hundred furlongs when we saw a very large, thick forest of pines and cypresses. We thought it was land, but in reality it was a bottomless sea overgrown with rootless trees, in spite of which the trees stood up motionless and straight, as if they were floating. On drawing near and forming an idea of the situation, we were in a quandary what to do, for it was not possible to sail between the trees, they being thick and close together, nor did it seem easy to turn back.

Climbing the tallest tree, I looked to see how things were on the other side, and I saw that the forest extended for fifty stades or a little more, and that another ocean lay beyond. So we resolved to lift the ship on to the tree-tops, which were thick, and cross over, if we could, to the

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
(mp) reproach  
**ἀνέρχομαι** go up; return  
**ἀνιμάω** pull up  
**ἄχρι** as far as (+gen); until  
**βιάζω** use force on, violate  
**βιάω** use force against, overcome  
**δένδρον** tree  
**διαυγής** translucent  
**διαχώρισμα** cleft, division  
**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand  
**ἐκδέχομαι** receive; succeed to a  
position  
**ἐκδέω** attach, hang on  
**ἐπείσερχομαι** come in also  
**ἐπισύρω** (ὑ) drag, trail; (mp) crawl  
**ἑστία** hearth ~Hestia  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station

**ἱστίον** sail ~stand  
**καθαιρέω** take down, close ~heresy  
**καθάπερ** exactly as  
**καθαρός** clean, pure  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κάλως** ship's thick rope  
**κλάδος** branch, shoot  
**κόμη** hair ~comet  
**μόλις** with difficulty, barely  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**πετάννουμι** (ὑ) spread, spread out  
**πλόος** -ῶ course, voyage ~float  
**προωθέω** push forward  
**πυκνός** dense, frequent; shrewd  
**σεισμός** shaking  
**ὕλη** (ὑ) forest, firewood  
**ὕληεις** (ὑ) wooded  
**χάσμα** -τος (n, 3) chasm, gaping  
opening  
**ὠκεανός** ocean

ὠκεανὸν ἐκδεχόμενον. καὶ δὴ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν ἀναθεμένους  
τὴν ναῦν ἐπὶ τὴν κόμην τῶν δένδρων πυκνὴ δὲ ἦν  
ὑπερβιβάσαι, εἰ δυναίμεθα, εἰς τὴν θάλατταν τὴν ἑτέραν·  
καὶ οὕτως ἐποιούμεν. ἐκδήσαντες γὰρ αὐτὴν κάλῳ  
μεγάλῳ καὶ ἀνελθόντες ἐπὶ τὰ δένδρα μόλις ἀνιμησάμεθα,  
καὶ θέντες ἐπὶ τῶν κλάδων, πετάσαντες τὰ ἰστία  
καθάπερ ἐν θαλάττῃ ἐπλέομεν τοῦ ἀνέμου προωθούντος  
ἐπισυρόμενοι· ἔνθα δὴ καὶ τὸ Ἀντιμάχου τοῦ ποιητοῦ ἔπος  
ἐπεισηλθέ μεφῆσιν γάρ που κακέϊνος·

«Τοῖσιν δ' ὑλήεντα διὰ πλόον ἐρχομένοισιν.»

#### 2.43-44

Βιασάμενοι δὲ ὅμως τὴν ὕλην ἀφικόμεθα εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, καὶ  
πάλιν ὁμοίως καθέντες τὴν ναῦν ἐπλέομεν διὰ καθαροῦ  
καὶ διαυγοῦς ὕδατος, ἄχρι δὴ ἐπέστημεν χάσματι μεγάλῳ  
ἐκ τοῦ ὕδατος διεστῶτος γεγενημένῳ, καθάπερ ἐν τῇ γῇ  
πολλάκις ὀρώμεν ὑπὸ σεισμῶν γενόμενα διαχωρίσματα.  
ἡ μὲν οὖν ναὺς καθελόντων ἡμῶν τὰ



|ocean |receive; succeed *καὶ δὴ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν* |consecrate, lay on, impute;  
 |to a position |dense, frequent; shrewd  
*τὴν ναῦν ἐπὶ τὴν* |hair *τῶν* |tree  
*ὑπερβιβάσαι, εἰ δυναίμεθα, εἰς τὴν θάλατταν τὴν ἑτέραν·*  
*καὶ οὕτως ἐποιοῦμεν.* |attach, hang on, *ἰρ αὐτὴν κάλω*  
*μεγάλω καὶ* |go up; return *᾿πὶ τὰ* |tree |with |pull up  
 |diffi-  
*καὶ θέντες ἐπὶ τῶν* |branch, |spread, |barely *τὰ ἱστία*  
 |shoot |spread out  
 |exactly as *ἐν θαλάττῃ ἐπλέομεν τοῦ ἀνέμου* |push forward  
 |drag, trail; *ἔνθα δὴ καὶ τὸ Ἀντιμάχου τοῦ ποιητοῦ ἔπος*  
 |(mp) crawl  
 |come in also, *εφησὶν γάρ που κακῆϊνος·*

«Τοῖσιν δ' |wooded *διὰ* |course, *ἐρχομένοισιν.»*  
 |voyage

## 2.43-44

Βιασάμενοι δὲ ὅμως *τὴν ὕλην ἀφικόμεθα εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, καὶ*  
*πάλιν ὁμοίως* |burn *τὴν ναῦν ἐπλέομεν διὰ* |clean, pure  
*καὶ* |translucent ὕδατος, |as *ἄς ἵστημεν* |chasm, gap-  
 |(+gen); until |ing opening  
*ἐκ τοῦ ὕδατος* |stand apart *γεγεννημένω,* |exactly as *ἐν τῇ γῇ*  
*πολλάκις ὀρώμεν ὑπὸ* |shaking *γενόμενα* |cleft, division  
*ἡ μὲν οὖν ναὺς* |take down, close *ὧν τὰ*

farther side; and that is what we did. We made her fast to a large rope, climbed the trees and pulled her up with much ado. Setting her on the branches and spreading our canvas, we sailed just as if we were at sea, carried along by the force of the wind. At that juncture a line of the poet Antimachus came into my head; he says somewhere or other:

“And unto them their forest cruise pursuing.”

#### 2.43-44

We managed the wood in spite of everything and reached the water. Lowering the ship again in the same way we sailed through pure, clear water, until we came to a great crevasse made by the water dividing, like the cracks that one often sees in the earth, made by earthquakes. Though we got in the sails, the ship was slow

*vocabulary*

**ἄγέλη** herd ~demagogue  
**ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture  
**ἄγωνία** contest; agony  
**ἀναπλάσσω** remodel  
**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off; turn out  
 ~basis  
**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height  
**βουκέφαλος** bull-headed  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**διαρρέω** flow through  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπιζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) join up/to  
**ἐπιφάνεια** manifestation; superifice  
**ἑστία** hearth ~Hestia  
**εὐπρόσιτος** accessible  
**ἱστίον** sail ~stand  
**καταφέρω** bring down, kill ~bear  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**κώπη** handle; oar ~capture  
**μερίζω** allot, divide  
**μυκηθμός** (ῥ) bellowing  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**παράδοξος** incredible  
**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
 ~pelagic

**περάω** cross over, drive across; sell as  
 a slave ~pierce  
**περιβλέπω** look around  
**πέρνημι** export, sell as a slave ~porno  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πόθεν** from where?  
**προῖημι** send forth, abandon  
**προσανίημι** send up in addition  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**προσδοκέω** be thought besides  
**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic  
**πρόσωθεν** forward, in the future; far  
**σιτίον** (ῥ) grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl  
 noun) 200 meters  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**συνάπτω** join, partake; adjoin; consult;  
 fight ~haptic  
**συνοικέω** live together  
**ὕδρεύω** draw water ~hydrogen  
**ὕπερχύπτω** pop one's head up  
**ὕποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer  
 ~doctrine  
**φοβερός** frightful, afraid  
**χίλιοι** (ῥ) thousand ~kilo-

ἰστία οὐ ῥαδίως ἔσθη παρ' ὀλίγον ἐλθοῦσα κατενεχθῆναι. ὑπερκύψαντες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἐωρῶμεν βάθος ὅσον σταδίων χιλίων μάλα φοβερὸν καὶ παράδοξον· εἰσθήκει γὰρ τὸ ὕδωρ ὥσπερ μεμερισμένον· περιβλέποντες δὲ ὁρῶμεν κατὰ δεξιὰ οὐ πάνυ πόρρωθεν γέφυραν ἐπεζευγμένην ὕδατος συνάπτοντος τὰ πελάγη κατὰ τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν, ἐκ τῆς ἐτέρας θαλάττης εἰς τὴν ἐτέραν διαρρέοντος. προσελάσαντες οὖν ταῖς κώπαις κατ' ἐκείνο παρεδράμομεν καὶ μετὰ πολλῆς ἀγωνίας ἐπεράσαμεν οὔποτε προσδοκῆσαντες.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἡμᾶς ὑπεδέχετο πέλαγος προσηνὲς καὶ νῆσος οὐ μεγάλη, εὐπρόσιτος, συνοικουμένη· ἐνέμοντο δὲ αὐτὴν ἄνθρωποι ἄγριοι, Βουκέφαλοι, κέρατα ἔχοντες, οἷον παρ' ἡμῖν τὸν Μινώταυρον ἀναπλάττουσιν. ἀποβάντες δὲ προήειμεν ὑδρευσόμενοι καὶ σιτία ληψόμενοι, εἴ ποθεν δυνηθείμεν· οὐκέτι γὰρ εἵχομεν. καὶ ὕδωρ μὲν αὐτοῦ πλησίον εὔρομεν, ἄλλο δὲ οὐδὲν ἐφαίνετο, πλὴν μυκηθμὸς πολὺς οὐ πόρρωθεν ἠκούετο. δόξαντες οὖν ἀγέλην

ἰστία οὐ ραδίως ἔσθη παρ' ὀλίγον ἐλθοῦσα |bring down, kill  
 |pop one's head up ἡμεῖς ἑωρῶμεν |depth, ὅσον σταδίων  
 |height  
 χιλίων μάλα |frightful, καὶ |incredible εἰστήκει γὰρ  
 |afraid  
 τὸ ὕδωρ ὥσπερ |allot, divide |look around δὲ  
 ὁρῶμεν κατὰ δεξιὰ οὐ πάνυ |forward, in the|dam, dike; bridge  
 |future; far  
 |join up/to ὕδατος |join, partake; adjoin; the open sea...τὰ  
 |consult; fight  
 τὴν |appearance , ἐκ τῆς ἑτέρας θαλάττης εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν  
 |flow through . |go to, approach οὖν ταῖς |handle; oar τ' ἐκεῖνο  
 παρεδράμομεν καὶ μετὰ πολλῆς |contest; ἐπεράσαμεν  
 |agony  
 οὐποτε προσδοκήσαντες.

|thence ἡμᾶς |welcome, ac-|the open|send up in addition, - os  
 |cept, suffer |sea  
 οὐ μεγάλη, |accessible , |live together ἐνέμοντο δὲ αὐτὴν  
 ἄνθρωποι |wild, , |bull-headed , κέρατα ἔχοντες, οἷον παρ'  
 |savage  
 ἡμῖν τὸν Μινώταυρον |remodel . ἀποβάντες δὲ  
 προήειμεν |draw water καὶ σιτία ληψόμενοι, εἴ ποθεν  
 δυνηθείμεν· οὐκέτι γὰρ εἴχομεν. καὶ ὕδωρ μὲν αὐτοῦ  
 πλησίον εὔρομεν, ἄλλο δὲ οὐδὲν ἐφαίνετο, πλὴν |bellowing  
 πολὺς οὐ |forward, in the. ούετο. δόξαντες οὖν |herd  
 |future; far

to lose headway and so came near being engulfed. Peering over the edge, we saw a precipice of fully a thousand furlongs, most frightful and unnatural—the water stood there as if cut apart! But as we looked about us we saw on the right at no great distance a bridge thrown across, which was of water, joining the surfaces of the two seas and flowing from one to the other. Rowing up, therefore, we ran into the stream and by great effort got across, though we thought we should never do it.

**2.44**

Then we came to a smooth sea and an island of no great size that was easily accessible and was inhabited. It was peopled by savages, the Bullheads, who have horns in the style that the Minotaur is represented at home. Landing, we went up country to get water and food if we could, for we no longer had any. Water we found close by, but there was nothing else to be seen, though we heard a great bellowing not far off. Thinking it was a herd of cattle, we

*vocabulary*

**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute  
**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀναστρέφω** act; overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy  
**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned  
**ἀποσφάζω** cut the throat  
**ἀτιμώρητος** (ι) unavenged, unpunished  
**ἄχρι** as far as (+gen); until  
**βουκέφαλος** bull-headed  
**γοερός** distressing; lamenting  
**διαίρῃω** divide, distinguish, distribute  
**διανεύω** nod; avoid  
**δοκιμάζω** test, approve  
**εἴτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station  
**ἰκετεύω** approach to beg

**ἰχθύς** -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to ~fugitive  
**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine  
**κρόμμυον** onion  
**λύτρον** ransom, recompense  
**μυκάομαι** (υ) moo, creak, ring  
**ξηρός** dry, the land ~xeriscape  
**ὀπίσω** backwards, later in time, after (+gen)  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**παραινέω** recommend, exhort, warn  
**περιοράω** look around; watch; permit  
**προχωρέω** proceed, come forward  
**σιτίον** (ι) grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture; understand ~epilepsy  
**συνίημι** send together; hear, notice, understand ~jet  
**τυρός** (υ) cheese

εἶναι βοῶν, κατ' ὀλίγον προχωροῦντες ἐπέστημεν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις. οἱ δὲ ἰδόντες ἡμᾶς ἐδίωκον, καὶ τρεῖς μὲν τῶν ἐταίρων λαμβάνουσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν καταφεύγομεν.

Εἴτα μέντοι πάντες ὅπλισάμενοι— οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν ἀτιμωρήτους περιδεῖν τοὺς φίλους— ἐμπίπτομεν τοῖς Βουκεφάλοις τὰ κρέα τῶν ἀνηρημένων διαιρουμένοις· φοβήσαντες δὲ πάντας διώκομεν, καὶ κτείνομέν γε ὅσον πεντήκοντα καὶ ζῶντας αὐτῶν δύο λαμβάνομεν, καὶ αὖθις ὀπίσω ἀναστρέφομεν τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἔχοντες. σιτίον μέντοι οὐδὲν εὔρομεν.

Οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι παρήνουν ἀποσφάττειν τοὺς εἰλημμένους, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐκ ἐδοκίμαζον, ἀλλὰ δήσας ἐφύλαττον αὐτούς, ἄχρι δὴ ἀφίκοντο παρὰ τῶν Βουκεφάλων πρέσβεις ἀπαιτοῦντες ἐπὶ λύτροις τοὺς συνειλημμένους· συνίεμεν γὰρ αὐτῶν διανευόντων καὶ γοερὸν τι μυκωμένων ὥσπερ ἱκετευόντων. τὰ λύτρα δὲ ἦν τυροὶ πολλοὶ καὶ ἰχθύες ξηροὶ καὶ κρόμμυα καὶ



εἶναι βοῶν, κατ' ὀλίγον |proceed, come |set; (mp) come/be  
 |forward |near, direct, stop  
 ἀνθρώποις. οἱ δὲ ἰδόντες ἡμᾶς ἐδίωκον, καὶ τρεῖς μὲν τῶν  
 ἐταίρων λαμβάνουσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν

|resort to, flee to,  
 |appeal to

|then, there- υ πάντες |prepare, arm — οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν  
 |fore, next

|unavenged, un- περιδεῖν τοὺς φίλους— ἐμπίπτομεν τοῖς  
 |punished

|bull-headed τὰ |meat τῶν |take up |divide, distin-  
 |guish, distribute

φοβήσαντες δὲ πάντας διώκομεν, καὶ κτείνομέν γε ὅσον  
 πεντήκοντα καὶ ζῶντας αὐτῶν δύο λαμβάνομεν, καὶ αὐθις

ὀπίσω |act: overturn; mid: find|captive ἔχοντες. σιτίον  
 |oneself in  
 μέντοι οὐδὲν εὔρομεν.

Οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι |recommend, |cut the throat τοὺς  
 |exhort, warn

εἰλημμένους, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐκ |test, approve, ἀλλὰ δήσας

ἐφύλαττον αὐτούς, |as far` as ἰφίκοντο παρὰ τῶν  
 |(+gen); until

|bull-headed πρέσβεις |demand to ἐπὶ |ransom, οὐκ  
 |have returned |recompense

|seize, capture; under-|send together; hear τῶν |nod; avoid καὶ  
 |stand

|distressing; |moo, creak, ring` περ |approach to beg ἀ |ransom, οὐκ  
 |lamenting |recompense

ἦν |cheese πολλοὶ καὶ |fish |dry, the|onion καὶ  
 |land

went ahead cautiously and came upon the men of whom I spoke. On seeing us, they gave chase, and captured three of my comrades, but the rest of us made our escape to the sea.

Then, however, we all armed ourselves—it did not seem right to let our friends go unavenged—and fell on the Bullheads while they were portioning out the flesh of the men they had slain. We put them all to flight and gave chase, killing about fifty and taking two alive: then we turned back to the ship with our prisoners. We found no food, though.

The rest therefore urged that the captives be killed; I did not approve of this, however, but put them in irons and kept them under guard until ambassadors came from the Bullheads, asking for them and offering a ransom. We understood them because they made signs and bellowed plaintively as if in entreaty. The ransom was a number of cheeses, dried fish, onions, and four does, each

*vocabulary*

ἄδεής (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos  
 αἰδοῖον genitals  
 αἰδοῖος modest, honored  
 δελφίς -νος (m) dolphin  
 εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form  
 ~-oid  
 εἰρηνικός peaceful  
 ἔλαφος (f) deer  
 ἐμπίπτω fall into; attack ~petal  
 ἐπιμένω wait, stay ~remain  
 ἐπισύρω (ὑ) drag, trail; (mp) crawl  
 ζεύγνυμι (ὑ) yoke, join ~zygote  
 ἡνιοχέω hold reins  
 ἰχθύς -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
 καινός new, fresh, strange  
 καινόω freshen, innovate, make strange  
 ναύτης -ου (m, 1) sailor ~navy  
 ναυτιλία sailing ~navy  
 ὀθόνη linen  
 ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter  
 ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how

great

ὀρθόω stand up  
 ὄρνειον bird ~ornithology  
 πάντοθεν from all directions  
 παραπίπτω fall in the way; go stray  
 πετάννυμι (ὑ) spread, spread out  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 ποδῶν neck, end  
 πρόειμι to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far  
 προφαίνω show; pass: appear  
 ~photon  
 σημεῖον sign  
 συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
 συμφύω pull together, mend  
 τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid  
 ὕπιος lying on one's back; flipped; flat  
 φελλεύς -ος (m) stony ground  
 φελλῶν -ος (m, 3) stony ground  
 φελλός cork tree

ἔλαφοι τέτταρες, τρεῖς ἐκάστη πόδας ἔχουσα, δύο μὲν τοὺς ὀπισθεν, οἱ δὲ πρόσω ἐς ἓνα συμπεφύκεσαν. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἀποδόντες τοὺς συνειλημμένους καὶ μίαν ἡμέραν ἐπιμείναντες ἀνήχθημεν.

## 2.45

Ἄηδη δὲ ἰχθύες τε ἡμῖν ἐφαίνοντο καὶ ὄρνεα παρεπέτετο καὶ ἄλλ' ὅποσα γῆς πλησίον οὕσης σημεία προφαίνεται. μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ καὶ ἄνδρας εἶδομεν καινῷ τῷ τρόπῳ ναυτιλίας χρωμένους· αὐτοὶ γὰρ καὶ ναῦται καὶ νῆες ἦσαν. λέξω δὲ τοῦ πλοῦ τὸν τρόπον· ὕπτιοι κείμενοι ἐπὶ τοῦ ὕδατος ὀρθώσαντες τὰ αἰδοῖα— μεγάλα δὲ φέρουσιν— ἐξ αὐτῶν ὀθόνην πετάσαντες καὶ ταῖς χερσὶν τοὺς ποδεῶνας κατέχοντες ἐμπίπτοντος τοῦ ἀνέμου ἔπλεον. ἄλλοι δὲ μετὰ τούτους ἐπὶ φελλῶν καθήμενοι ζεύξαντες δύο δελφίνας ἥλαυνόν τε καὶ ἡνιόχουν· οἱ δὲ προϊόντες ἐπεσύροντο τοὺς φελλούς. οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὔτε ἡδίκουν οὔτε ἔφευγον, ἀλλ' ἥλαυνον ἀδεῶς τε καὶ εἰρηνικῶς τὸ εἶδος τοῦ ἡμετέρου πλοίου θαυμάζοντες καὶ πάντοθεν

|deer |four , τρεῖς ἐκάστη πόδας ἔχουσα, δύο μὲν  
 τοὺς |behind, , οἱ δὲ |forward, in the fu-|pull together, mend ὑπὲρ  
 |hereafter |ture; far  
 τούτοις ἀποδόντες τοὺς |seize, capture; un- καὶ μίαν ἡμέραν  
 |derstand  
 |wait, stay ἀνήχθημεν.

## 2.45

Ἄηδη δὲ |fish τε ἡμῖν ἐφαίνοντο καὶ |bird |fall in the  
 |way; go stray  
 καὶ ἄλλ’ |as/how , ἱ- |near οὔσης σημεία |show; pass: appear  
 |many/great  
 μετ’ ὀλίγον δὲ καὶ ἄνδρας εἶδομεν καινῶ τῷ τρόπῳ  
 ναυτιλίας χρωμένους· αὐτοὶ γὰρ καὶ |sailor καὶ νῆες ἦσαν.  
 λέξω δὲ τοῦ πλοῦ τὸν τρόπον· |supine κείμενοι ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 ὕδατος |stand up τὰ αἰδοῖα— μεγάλα δὲ φέρουσιν—  
 ἐξ αὐτῶν |linen |spread, καὶ ταῖς χερσὶν τοὺς  
 |spread out  
 |neck, end κατέχοντες ἐμπύπτοντος τοῦ ἀνέμου ἔπλεον.  
 ἄλλοι δὲ μετὰ τούτους ἐπὶ φελλῶν καθήμενοι |yoke, join  
 δύο |dolphin ἡλαυνόν τε καὶ |hold reins οἱ δὲ |to have been  
 |before, earlier  
 |drag, trail; τοὺς |cork tree . οὔτοι ἡμᾶς οὔτε ἡδίκουν οὔτε  
 |(mp) crawl  
 ἔφευγον, ἀλλ’ ἡλαυνον |fearless τε καὶ |peaceful τὸ |form  
 τοῦ ἡμετέρου πλοίου θαυμάζοντες καὶ |from all directions

of which had only three feet, for while they had two behind, the forefeet had grown together. In exchange for all this we surrendered the captives, and after stopping there a single day we put to sea.

#### 2.45

Already we began to see fish, birds flew by and all the other signs that land was near made their appearance. In a little while we saw men who were following a novel mode of sailing, being at once sailors and ships. Let me tell you how they did it: they lay on their backs on the water, hoisted their penises, which are sizeable, spread sail on them, held the dews in their hands, and were off and away as soon as the wind struck them. Others came next who sat on corks and had a pair of dolphins hitched up, driving them and guiding them with reins; in moving ahead, the dolphins drew the corks along. They neither offered us harm nor ran away from us, but drove along fearlessly and peacefully, wondering at the shape of our boat and examining her from all



προσῆσαν γὰρ καὶ ἐδεξιούντο καὶ ἡσπάζοντο, πάνυ ἑταιρικῶς κεκοσμημέναι  
καὶ καλαὶ πᾶσαι καὶ νεάνιδες, ποδήρεις τοὺς χιτῶνας ἐπισυρόμεναι (p. 328)

*vocabulary*

ἀκριβής (ἱ) exact  
 ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue  
 ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute  
 βοά din, a shout  
 δεξιόομαι salute, greet  
 διακονέω (ᾱ) serve, minister to  
 διαφεύγω escape, survive  
 δοκιμάζω test, approve  
 ἐπισύρω (ῥ) drag, trail; (mp) crawl  
 ἑσπέρα evening, west  
 ἑταιρικός of a companion; meretricious  
 κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos  
 κρανίον (ᾱ) skull  
 λαγχάνω be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
 forms) allot; receive  
 μαλάχη mallow  
 μαντεύομαι to divine ~mantis  
 νεᾶνις -δος (f) young woman ~neon  
 ξίφος -εος (n, 3) sword  
 ὀνομαι blame ~name  
 ὄνος (f) donkey ~onager

ὄπλή hoof  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 ὀστέον bone ~osteoporosis  
 περιβλέπω look around  
 περισκοπέω look around, inspect  
 ποδῆρης foot-length  
 προῖημι send forth, abandon  
 προσάγω bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
 πρόσσειμι approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
 προχειρίζω choose, allot  
 σκέλος -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis  
 σπάω draw, pull out, pluck ~spatula  
 συγκαλέω call together ~gallo  
 συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
 χιτῶν -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor  
 χρηστός useful; brave, worthy  
 χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir

περισκοποῦντες.

## 2.46

Ἐσπέρας δὲ ἤδη προσήχθημεν νήσῳ οὐ μεγάλη·  
κατωκείτο δὲ ὑπὸ γυναικῶν, ὥς ἐνομίζομεν, Ἑλλάδα  
φωνὴν προϊεμένων· προσήεσαν γὰρ καὶ ἐδεξιούντο καὶ  
ἡσπάζοντο, πάνυ ἐταιρικῶς κεκοσμημέναι καὶ καλαὶ  
πᾶσαι καὶ νεάνιδες, ποδήρεις τοὺς χιτῶνας ἐπισυρόμεναι.  
ἡ μὲν οὖν νῆσος ἐκαλεῖτο Κοβαλοῦσα, ἡ δὲ πόλις αὐτὴ  
Ὑδαμαργία. λαχοῦσαι δ' οὖν ἡμᾶς αἱ γυναῖκες ἐκάστη  
πρὸς ἑαυτὴν ἀπῆγεν καὶ ξένον ἐποιεῖτο. ἐγὼ δὲ μικρὸν  
ἀποστὰς οὐ γὰρ χρηστὰ ἐμαντευόμην ἀκριβέστερόν τε  
περιβλέπων ὁρῶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων ὅσῳ καὶ κρανία  
κείμενα. καὶ τὸ μὲν βοὴν ἰστάναι καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους  
συγκαλεῖν καὶ εἰς τὰ ὄπλα χωρεῖν οὐκ ἐδοκίμαζον.  
προχειρισάμενος δὲ τὴν μαλάχην πολλὰ ἠὺχόμην αὐτῇ  
διαφυγεῖν ἐκ τῶν παρόντων κακῶν· μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ τῆς  
ξένης διακονουμένης εἶδον τὰ σκέλη οὐ γυναικός, ἀλλ' ὄνου  
ὀπλᾶς· καὶ δὴ σπασάμενος τὸ ξίφος συλλαμβάνω



|look around, inspect

2.46

Ἐσπέρας δὲ ἤδη |bring to a place νήσω οὐ μεγάλη·  
κατωκείμετο δὲ ὑπὸ γυναικῶν, ὡς ἐνομιζομεν, Ἑλλάδα  
φωνήν |send forth, |approach γὰρ καὶ |salute, greet καὶ  
|abandon  
|greet, salute , πάνν |of a compan- |marshal, array καὶ καλαὶ  
|ion; meretri-  
πᾶσαι καὶ |young |foot-length τοὺς χιτῶνας |drag, trail;  
|woman | (mp) crawl  
ἡ μὲν οὖν νῆσος ἐκαλείτο Κοβαλοῦσα, ἡ δὲ πόλις αὐτῇ  
Ὑδαμαργία. |be allotted; (esp. ᾠ- λέλα- ᾠ- αἱ γυναῖκες ἐκάστη  
|forms) allot; receive  
πρὸς αὐτὴν |lead away, back ἔνον ἐποιεῖτο. ἐγὼ δὲ μικρὸν  
ἀποστὰς οὐ γὰρ |useful; |to divine ἀκριβέστερόν τε  
|brave,  
|look around ὁρῶ |worthy  
πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων |bone καὶ |skull  
κείμενα. καὶ τὸ μὲν βοὴν ἰστάναι καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους  
|call together καὶ εἰς τὰ ὅπλα |withdraw, ᾠ- give |test, approve  
|way to (+dat)  
|choose, allot δὲ τὴν |mallow πολλὰ νῦχόμεν αὐτῇ  
|escape, ἐκ τῶν παρόντων κακῶν μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ τῆς  
|survive  
ξένης |serve, minister to εἶδον τὰ |leg οὐ γυναικός, ἀλλ' ὄνου  
|hoof καὶ δὴ |draw, pull out τὸ |sword |seize, capture;  
|understand

sides.

## 2.46

In the evening we touched at another island of no great size. It was inhabited by women — or so we thought — who spoke Greek, and they came up to us, welcomed and embraced us. They were got up just like courtezans and were all beautiful and young, with tunics that swept on the ground. The island was called Witchery, and the city Watertown. Each of the women took one of us home with her and made him her guest. But I excused myself for a moment — I had misgivings — and on looking about rather carefully, saw many human bones and skulls lying there. To make an outcry, call my comrades together and arm ourselves did not seem best to me, but I fetched out my mallow and prayed to it earnestly that I might escape the ills that beset me. After a little while, as my hostess was waiting on me, I saw that her legs were not a woman's but those of an ass. Then I drew my sword,



ὅμως δὲ τὸ ξίφος εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ καθήγα πειρώμενος· τὸ δὲ αἷμα ἐγένετο.

(p. 332)

*vocabulary*

**ἀνακρίνω** interrogate, examine  
**ἀνέρχομαι** go up; return  
**ἀντιπέρα** (αἶ) on the other side of  
 ~pierce  
**ἀποβλέπω** stare at, adore  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure  
**βοάω** shout  
**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπιδημέω** inhabit; visit  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἥπειρος** (f) mainland, continent  
**θαλάσσιος** marine, maritime  
**καθίημι** (τι) speed down upon; take  
 down ~jet  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κατέρχομαι** come down, out from

**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
 have sex  
**μεθύω** be soaked, drunk ~mead  
**μηνύω** disclose, betray, accuse  
**ξίφος** -εος (n, 3) sword  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὀστέον** bone ~osteoporosis  
**προσαγορεύω** address, call by name  
**προσεύχομαι** pray, vow  
**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συνέρχομαι** come together  
**συνευνάομαι** go to bed with  
**τέγος** -εος (n, 3) roof ~stegosaurus  
**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy  
**ὕπαιυγάζω** shine under; dawn

τε αὐτὴν καὶ δῆσας περὶ τῶν ὅλων ἀνέκρινον. ἡ δέ, ἄκουσα μὲν, εἶπεν δὲ ὅμως, αὐτὰς μὲν εἶναι θαλαττίους γυναικάς Ὀνοσκελέας προσαγορευομένας, τροφὴν δὲ ποιεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐπιδημοῦντας ξένους. «ἐπειδὴν γάρ,» ἔφη, «μεθύσωμεν αὐτούς, συνευνηθεῖσαι κοιμωμένοις ἐπιχειροῦμεν.» ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἐκείνην μὲν αὐτοῦ κατέλιπον δεδεμένην, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀνελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ τέγος ἐβόων τε καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους συνεκάλουν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, τὰ πάντα ἐμήνουν αὐτοῖς καὶ τά γε ὅσα ἔδεικνουν καὶ ἦγον ἔσω πρὸς τὴν δεδεμένην· ἡ δὲ αὐτίκα ὕδωρ ἐγένετο καὶ ἀφανὴς ἦν. ὅμως δὲ τὸ ξίφος εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ καθῆκα πειρώμενος· τὸ δὲ αἶμα ἐγένετο.

## 2.47

Ταχέως οὖν ἐπὶ ναῦν κατελθόντες ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα ὑπὴρύγαζεν, ἤδη τὴν ἥπειρον ἀπεβλέπομεν εἰκάζομέν τε εἶναι τὴν ἀντιπέρας τῇ ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἰκουμένην κειμένην. προσκυνήσαντες δ' οὖν καὶ προσευξάμενοι περὶ τῶν μελλόντων ἐσκοποῦμεν, καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἔδοκει

τε αὐτήν καὶ δῆσας περὶ τῶν ὅλων |interrogate, ἡ δέ,  
 |examine  
 ἄκουσα μὲν, εἶπεν δὲ |anyway, nevertheless ἵναι |marine,  
 |maritime  
 γυναικάς Ὀνοσκελέας |address, call by name , |food, δέ  
 |upkeep  
 ποιῆσθαι τοὺς |inhabit; visit ξένους. <|when, γάρ, >  
 |after  
 ἔφη, <|be soaked, drunk' οὐς, |go to bed with κοιμωμένοις  
 |do, try, attack .> ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἐκείνην μὲν αὐτοῦ  
 κατέλιπον δεδεμένην, αὐτὸς δὲ |go up; return' ἡ τὸ |roof  
 |shout τε καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους |call together . ἐπεὶ δὲ |come together  
 τὰ πάντα |disclose, be-' τοῖς καὶ τά γε |bone ἐδείκνυν καὶ  
 |tray, accuse  
 ἦγον ἔσω πρὸς τὴν δεδεμένην· ἡ δὲ αὐτίκα ὕδωρ ἐγένετο  
 καὶ |unseen, ὄφcult, |anyway, ἡ never- |sword εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ |speed down upon;  
 |obscura |theless |take down  
 πειρώμενος· τὸ δὲ αἷμα ἐγένετο.

## 2.47

Ταχέως οὖν ἐπὶ ναῦν |come down, out|sail away καὶ  
 |from  
 ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα |shine , ἤδη τὴν |mainland, |stare at, adore  
 |under; |continent  
 |dawn  
 |liken; τε εἶναι τὴν ἀντιπέρασ τῇ ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἰκουμένη  
 |conjecture  
 κειμένην. |kow tow to; kiss δ' οὖν καὶ |pray, vow περὶ  
 τῶν μελλόντων |behold, , καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει  
 |consider

caught and bound her and questioned her about the whole thing. Against her will she told me that they were women of the sea, called Asslegs and that they fed on the strangers that visited them. “When we have made them drunk,” said she, “we go to bed with them and attack them in their sleep.” On hearing this, I left her there tied up, and myself went up to the housetop and cried out and called my comrades together. When they had come, I told them everything, showed them the bones and led them in to the woman who was tied up, but she immediately turned to water and disappeared. Nevertheless I thrust my sword into the water as a test, and the water turned to blood.

#### 2.47

With all speed we went back to the ship and sailed away. When the light of day began to show, we saw land and judged it to be the world opposite the one which we inhabit. After doing homage and offering prayer, we took thought for the future. Some of us

*vocabulary*

**ἀήρ** ἄέρος (ᾱ, m) mist, air ~air  
**αἰγιαλός** beach, shore  
**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy  
**ἀνέρχομαι** go up; return  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**βουκέφαλος** bull-headed  
**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**ἐκνήχομαι** swim away  
**ἐνοικέω** dwell in  
**ἐξῆς** in turn  
**ἐπιβαίνω** (+gen) set foot on, board, climb ~basis  
**ἐπιπίπτω** fall upon, attack  
**ἥρως** hero ~hero  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon

**κῆτος** -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean  
**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider  
**μεσόγαια** inland  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μόλις** with difficulty, barely  
**ὄνειρον** dream  
**ὄνειρος** dream  
**ὀπίσω** backwards, later in time, after (+gen)  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite  
**προσαράσσω** dash against  
**σκάφος** (τό) hull, ship; (ό) digging  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**σφοδρός** vehement  
**τελευταῖος** last, final  
**χειμῶν** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

ἐπιβᾶσιν μόνον αὐθις ὀπίσω ἀναστρέφειν, τοῖς δὲ τὸ  
 μὲν πλοῖον αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν, ἀνελθόντας δὲ εἰς τὴν  
 μεσόγαιαν πειραθῆναι τῶν ἐνοικούντων. ἐν ὅσῳ δὲ ταῦτα  
 ἐλογιζόμεθα, χειμῶν σφοδρὸς ἐπιπεσὼν καὶ προσαράξας  
 τὸ σκάφος τῷ αἰγιαλῷ διέλυσεν. ἡμεῖς δὲ μόλις  
 ἐξενηξάμεθα τὰ ὄπλα ἕκαστος καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο οἴός τε ἦν  
 ἀρπασάμενοι.

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τὰ μέχρι τῆς ἐτέρας γῆς συνενεχθέντα μοι  
 ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ καὶ παρὰ τὸν πλοῦν ἐν ταῖς νήσοις καὶ ἐν  
 τῷ ἀέρι καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐν τῷ κήτει καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐξήλθομεν,  
 παρά τε τοῖς ἥρωσι καὶ τοῖς ὀνείροις καὶ τὰ τελευταῖα  
 παρὰ τοῖς Βουκεφάλοις καὶ ταῖς Ὀνοσκελείαις, τὰ δὲ ἐπὶ  
 τῆς γῆς ἐν ταῖς ἐξῆς βίβλοις<sup>1</sup> διηγῆσομαι.

<sup>1</sup> There is no such book.



|(+gen) set, foot ν αὐθις |after, |act: overturn; mid: ὅς δὲ τὸ  
|on, board, climb |back |find oneself in

μὲν πλοῖον αὐτοῦ |leave behind, go up; return δὲ εἰς τὴν  
|abandon

μεσόγαιαν πειραθῆναι τῶν |dwell in . ἐν ὅσῳ δὲ ταῦτα

|reckon, |winter, |vehement |fall upon, attack |dash against  
|consider |storm

τὸ σκάφος τῷ |beach, |break up; re- ἡμεῖς δὲ |with difficulty,  
|shore |lax, weaken |barely

|swim away τὰ |tool ἕκαστος καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο οἷός τε ἦν

|carry off, seize .

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τὰ |as far as, until ἕως γῆς συνενεχθέντα μοι

ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ καὶ παρὰ τὸν πλοῦν ἐν ταῖς νήσοις καὶ ἐν

τῷ |mist, air ` μετὰ ταῦτα ἐν τῷ |whale καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐξήλθομεν,

παρά τε τοῖς |hero καὶ τοῖς ὀνείροις καὶ τὰ |last, final

παρὰ τοῖς |bull-headed καὶ ταῖς Ὀνοσκελεύαις, τὰ δὲ ἐπὶ

τῆς γῆς ἐν ταῖς |in turn ἑβλοῖς<sup>1</sup> |detail,  
|describe

<sup>1</sup> There is no such book.

proposed just to land and then turn back again, others to leave the boat there, go into the interior and see what the inhabitants were like. While we were debating this, a violent storm struck the boat, dashed it ashore and wrecked it, and we ourselves had much trouble in swimming out with our arms and anything else that we could catch up.

Thus far I have told you what happened to me until I reached the other world, first at sea, then during my voyage among the islands and in the air, then in the whale, and after we left it, among the heroes and the dreams, and finally among the Bullheads and the Asslegs. What happened in the other world I shall tell you in the succeeding books.